A Compleat System

OF

GRAMMAR

English and *Latin:*

WHEREIN

That Moſt Excellent *A R T* is *Plainly, Fully* and diſtinctly *Taught,* and practically *Manag'd* thro' every *P A R T* thereof.

IN

A Method which renders it Eaſie to all Capacities, and by the Uſe whereof the Learner may attain to the perfect Knowledge of the *L A T I N* Tongue in leſs than one quarter of the Time uſually ſpent therein, and thoſe who have loſt their *Latin* may hereby ſoon repair it,

Whereunto is Annexed

I. Rules *for Conſtruing, Compoſing and Placing* Latin *according to the* Ciceronean *Stile.*

II. *The* Doctrin *of* Engliſh *Particles, whereby* Youth *are enabled to expreſs themſelves* Pertinently, Elegantly *and* Fully.

Dedicated to His Highneſs the

DUKE of GLOUCESTER.

To His Highneſs

WILLIAM

DUKE of *GLOUCESTER*

BEING ſenſible (Illuſtrious *Sir*), That as Princes themſelves, ſo their Time is ſuperlatively Precious ; I therefore thought I could not better employ mine than in ſuch Conſiderations as might leſſen the Expence *thereof* in Your *Grammar* Study ; A Science which undoubtedly Your Highneſs begins to think neceſſary to accomplith a Prince: Undiſciplin'd

A 2 *Words*

The Epistle Dedicatory.

Words being as useless as undisciplin'd *Armies*, and of worse Consequence if the Mind be preferable to the Body. And therefore it is that the Great Master of *War* trains You up first in Letters, well knowing that Government should begin in the Mind before it Extendeth over Nations.

Accept therefore (hopeful Prince) the following Treatise, *which professeth utmost* Service; *And if it be of the same Mind with its Author is,*

<div align="right">

Your Highnesses

Most Humble, Faithful

and Devoted Servant

CLARE.

</div>

ADVERTISEMENT TO THE READER

Concerning the following GRAMMAR.

1. **I**T *is* English *and* Latin ab ovo usq; ad mala, *and I know no Reason why a Boy should not be enabled to give* Latin Rules *in the Examination of a* Lecture *for the two first Parts of* Grammar, *as well as the last two:* Therefore *it will be sufficient for the* Youth *to learn* memoriter *the* Latine *only, the chiefest Design of the* Version *is to illustrate them thro' the dark and as yet unknown paths of a strange Language, and therefore the Examples to each* Rule *are to be considered in the* Latin Collum, *the two Languages not alway runing parallel.*

2. *This* Grammar *is* Dialoguised Examinandi causa *and every* Responsum *is*

<div align="right">

again

A 3

</div>

Advertisement

again capable of Subdivisions for the better inculcating the Matter into the apprehension and memory of Lads, enabling them to _Question_ one another in all the Parts of Grammar.

3. _Every Subject is common plac'd_ memoriæ gratia, _and in_ Syntax _three Exceptions are not found, whereby it appears that if the Title be remembred the Case is at hand._

4. _The quantities of Syllables are plac'd in the first Part of_ Grammar _whereunto they belong, because pronunciation is a necessary attendant upon Letter, and Boys must be kept up to a sweet, clear, full, plain, distinct, and due pronouncing ; and herein much will be found new, and worthy observation._

5. _All the usual Stops, and Marks common in Authors, are also hereunto adjoyned, with their various uses._

6. _The Figures which belong unto each Part of_ Grammar _are immediately annexed thereunto._

7. Declensions _and_ Genders _are taught by the ending of the_ Nominative Case, _and_ Conjugations _by the_ Theme.

8. Both

To the Reader.

8. _Both in_ Nouns _and_ Verbs _the moveable Parts are so fixed in Tables, that Lads will easily fix them in their Memory._

9. _They are practically apply'd in such a Method, that the most stupid Boy with great Chearfulness will covet to be imployed in them, provided the Form be indigitated to him, and no more than one Substantive, one Adjective, or one Tense, be at first imposed._

10. Rules _for forming the_ Passive voice _from the_ Active, _and many other things in the_ syncritical Method.

11. Rules _for compound Verbs in changing, loosing, or taking Letters with other necessary Observations._

12. _An easie and pleasant Method to improve Lads in computing Verbs, or the way of teaching them to speak Latin, &c. And here the Master hath a large and pleasant Field to walk in, both for his own, and Schollars diversion, all other diversities of_ Grammar, _being but as so many Lanes leading therin._

13. The

Advertisement, &c.

13. *The practical Method of applying the Rules of Etymology and Syntax in the Methodical Examination of a Sentence.*

14. *The Method of varying Sentences whereby Youth are enabled to express their Conception several ways.*

15. *The Method of varying, using and applying Phrases.*

16. *The Musical Notes are added to every sort of Verse in Prosody, directing the Elevation and Depression of the Voice, &c.*

17. *The Method of Examining Verse.*

18. *Rules for Construing, Composing and disposing Latin Words according to the Ciceronean Stile.*

19. *The Doctrine of Particles, whereby Youth may be enabled to express themselves pertinently, elegantly and fully.*
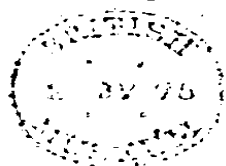
A

A Compleat System of
GRAMMAR.

The Entrance.	Introitus.
J. **H**Ow fare you *Martin*; how have you done since I saw you last?	J. **U**T vales *Martine*, quâ usus es valetudine ex quo aspectu fruebar?
M. Very well, God be praised, how do you find your self?	M. Perquam optime Deo gratias: Ut te habes.?
J. The best in the World, I humbly thank God, and you also.	J. Optime si quis alius in toto terrarum orbe, gratias humillime Deo, etiam tibi reddo.
M. Very well: We have now complemented long enough, pray tell me what School you go to?	M. *Bene* res habet, jam satis ceremoniæ *Johannes.* Dic quæso quam tu frequentas Scholam?
J. I learn of one——	J.Sub cujusla --auspiciis erudior.
M.And what art do you learn?	M. Et in quâ arte versaris?
J.I am conversant in Grammar.	J.In Grammaticâ versatus sum.
M. Is Grammar an Art?	M. Estne Grammatica ars?
J. Yes, And the most excellent of all the Liberal Sciences.	J. Maxime & omnium artium liberalium est præstantissima.
M. How many Liberal Arts are there?	M. Quot igitur sunt liberales artes?
J. There are Seven Liberal Sciences, Grammar, Logick, Rhetorick, Musick, Arithmetick, Geometry and Astronomy.	J. Septem sunt liberales artes, Grammatica, Dialectica, Rhetorica, Musica, Arithmetica, Geometria, Astronomia.
M. What is Grammar?	M. Quid est Grammatica?
J. Grammar is an Art of writing and speaking well.	J. Grammatica est ars recte scribendi, & bene loquendi.
M. How many parts hath Grammar?	M. Quot sunt partes Grammaticæ?
J. Grammar has Four Parts, Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody.	J. Partes Grammaticæ sunt quatuor, Orthographia, Etymologia, Syntaxis & Prosodia.
Of Orthography.	**De Orthographia.**
M. What is Orthography?	M. Quid est Orthographia?
J. Orthography, the first part of Grammar, is that which teacheth to write Words with proper Letters, and also to pronounce Syllables with due time.	J. Orthographia prima pars Grammaticæ, est qua ratio formandi literis propriis docetur, & proferendi syllabis etiam cum tempore recto.

B

Of Letters.

M. What is a Letter?

J. A Letter is the least part of a word, and in the Latine Tongue there are twenty five, to wit, A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

M. But why is not W. named here?

J. Because W. is never written in the Latine Tongue, the found thereof being supplied by U; as, I perswade.

Altho H be written, it hath not the power of a Letter, being only a note or mark of aspiration.

And K Y Z are not used in purely Latine, but in foreign words only.

M. Why are the Letters written two manner of ways, *viz.* in great and small Characters?

J. Because with Capital Letters must begin Periods, Proper Names, and also the Names of Arts, Dignities, Feafts, Plays, Offices, Titles, Vices, Vertues, also every Verse, and whatfoever we pay a particular refpect unto.

Alfo the English pronoun I, and the Interjection O, are always written with Capital Letters.

M. What do the Capitals I. H. S. fignifie, with points put between them?

J. I. fignifies Jcfus. S. Stands for The Saviour; and H. of Human Creatures.

M. By what Rule?

J. Because if Capital Letters are thus written alone, or but few together, they either fignifie some ancient abbreviature.

Or they fignifie proper names, as, C may ftand for *Charles.*

De Literis.

M. Quid eft Litera?

J. Litera eft minima vocis nota & apud Latinos viginti quinque funt in ufu, viz. a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r f t u v x y z.

M. Quare autem non ufum eft W?

J. Quia W. linguâ Romanâ non fcriptum: fonum ejus per u actum ut, fuadeo, (non) fwadeo.

Etfi fcribitur H, literæ tamen poteftatem non habet, quia eft nota afpirationis.

K Y Z etiam Latinis dictionibus nunquam admifcentur, quin peregrinis tantum.

M. Quare Literæ bifariam pinguntur majufculis & minufculis characteribus?

J. Quia majufculis inchoantur periodi, propria etiam nomina, & Artium, Dignitatum Feftorum, Ludorum, Officium, Titulorum, Virtutum, Vitium quilibet etiam verfus; & quæ magnam habent Emphafin.

Item Pronomen Anglicanum I, & interjectio O, literis majufculis femper pinguntur.

M. Quæ fignificant I. H. S. cum punctis interpofitis?

J. J. Significat Jefus. H. Hominum & S. Salvator.

M. Per quam regulam?

J. Quia fi literæ majufculæ ita fcribantur folum: vel fignificant antiquum aliquod compendium.

Vel Prænomina, ut, C pro Carolus.

Or they fignifie Numbers, as I fignifies One. X Ten. L Fifty. C a Hundred. D Five Hundred. and M a Thousand, 1698.

M. Why is I in Six VI written on the right hand of the V?

J. Because a leffer Number placed at the right hand of a greater, adds the value of the leffer to the greater.

But if it be placed on the left hand it abates its own value from the greater, as Four IV.

M. How are the letters divided?

J. Into Vowels and Confonants.

M. What is a Vowel?

J. A Vowel is a letter which can make a perfect found of it felf.

M. How many vowels are there?

J. There are fix vowels, a. e. i. o. u. y. all other letters are confonants.

M. Can any thing be made of vowels alone, without help of the confonants?

J. Yes, Dipthongs are made of Vowels.

M. What is a Dipthong?

J. A Dipthong is a two-fold, or double found of one Syllable.

M. How many Dipthongs are there?

J. There are Eight Diphthongs, namely, æ. ai. au. ei. eu. œ. oi. ui. or yi.

M. Give an Example in æ? Reward.

Give an Example in ai? a Sea-Crab.

Give an Example in au? Gold.

Give an Example in ei? Alas.

Give an Example in eu? *Europe.*

Give an Example in œ? a Supper.

Give an Example in oi? *Tray.*

Give an Example in ui? a *Harpy.*

Aut Numeros, ut I. Pro Unus. V. Quinque. X. Decem. L. Quinquaginta. C. Centum. D. Quingenti & M. Mille, ut MDCXCVIII.

M. I. in Sex VI. quare dextrorfum fcribitur?

J. Quia minor numerus dextrorfum locatus, quantitatem minoris majori addit.

Sed fi finiftrorum locetur ejus quantitatem à majore deducit ut, quatuor IV.

M. Quomodo dividuntur literæ?

J. In Vocales & Confonantes.

M. Quid eft Vocalis?

J. Vocalis eft Litera quæ per fe fonum integrum efficere poteft.

M. Quot funt Vocales?

J. Vocales funt Sex, a. e. i. o. u. y. cæteræ funt Confonantes.

M. Poteftnè aliquid componi tantummodo ex Vocalibus fine adminiculo confonantium?

J. Imo ex Vocalibus fiunt Dipthongi.

M. Quid eft Dipthongus?

J. Dipthongus eft binus vel geminus fonus unius Syllabæ.

M. Quot funt Dipthongi?

J. Octo funt Dipthongi, vidilicet æ. ai. au. ei. eu. œ. oi. ui. vel yi.

M. Redde Exemplum in æ? Præmium.

Da Exemplum in ai? Maia.

Exemplum in au? Aurum.

Exemplum in ei? Hei.

Exemplum in eu? *Europa.*

Exemplum in œ? Cœna.

Exemplum in oi? *Troïa.*

Exemplum in ui? *Harpuia.*

M. Now

M. Now unfold or explain the definition of a Consonant.

J. A Consonant is a Letter which must needs be joined with a Vowel, to make a Sound or Syllable.

M. How are Consonants divided?

J. Consonants are divided into Mutes and half Vowels.

M. How many Mutes are there?

J. Nine, b. c. d. f. g. k. p. q. t.

M. Why are they called Mutes?

J. Because by themselves they are still, and have no proper sound. But when they are pronounced, they seem to have Vowels post-poned.

M. How many half-Vowels are there?

Nine, l. m. n. r. s. x. z. jod. ve, of which l. m. n. r. s. are called liquids, because the sound seems as tho it were softned and melted.

x. z. j. are double Consonants, because they seem to have the force and power of Two Consonants.

M. Why are they called half Vowels?

J. Because they are Consonants which make a sound by themselves, as tho a Vowel were præponed.

Of Syllables.

M. What is made of the Letters?

J. A Syllable is made of the Letters.

M. What is a Syllable?

J. A Syllable is the discovery of a perfect sound at one motion of the Breath, and may consist of one or more Letters; as, the mind.

M. Explica jam definitionem Consonantis?

J. Consonans est Litera quæ tantum cum vocali syllabam componere potest.

M. Quomodo dividuntur consonæ?

J. Consonantes dividuntur in mutas & semi-vocales.

M. Quot sunt Mutæ?

J. Novem, b. c. d. f. g. k. p. q. t,

M. Quare dicuntur Mutæ?

J. Quia per se obmutescunt, & proprium sonum non habent. Sed dum proferuntur vocales sibi post habitas habere videntur.

M. Quot sunt semivocales?

J. Novem, l. m. n. r. s. x. z. j. v. ex quibus l. m. n. r. s. vocantur liquidæ quia sonus aliquando emollitur, & tanquam liquescit.

x. z. j. duplices sunt consonantes, quia duarum consonantium quasi vim & potestatem habent.

M. Quare dicuntur semi-vocales?

J. Quia consonæ sunt quæ per se sonum efficiunt tanquam vocalis dimidium sonum habent.

De Syllabis.

M. Ex literis quid fit?

J. Ex literis fit syllaba.

M. Quid est syllaba?

J. Syllaba est integri soni comprehensio unius literæ pluriumve spiritûs uno motu, ut, a-ni-mus.

M. How do you spell *Josephus*?

J. Jo-se-phus, *Joseph*.

M. Why is it spelt with J. not G.

J. Because G sounds hard before a, o, u, like the Greek Letter Gamma.

M. Why is *Jose-phus* spelt with ph, (not) *Jose-fus* with an f?

J. Because ph always sounds like f, and ch like k.

M. Why *Jo-sephus* (not) *Josephus*?

J. Because a Consonant set between two Vowels, belongs to the following Vowel, and begins that syllable, but x belongs to the former.

M. Why do you write *Generosus*, a Gentleman, with G not with J?

J. Because G before e i y sounds soft like the Hebrew letter jod.

M. How do you spell *annus* a Year?

J. *An-nus.* M. By what rule?

J. If the same consonant be doubled, the first ends the former, and the latter begins the following syllable.

M. How are the letters divided in Princeps a *Prince*?

J. Prin-ceps (not) princ-eps, because consonants which cannot be joined in the beginning of a word must be parted in the middle.

M. How do you spell *tristis* sad?

J. *Tri-stis* (not) *tris-tis*, because consonants which can be joined in the beginning of a word, must not be parted in the middle.

M. Rehearse a Catalogue then of those consonants which happening together must never be parted?

M. *Josephus* quomodo literas formas? J. *Jo-se-phus*.

M. Josephus cum J (non) G quare?

J. Quia G ante a o u duriter sonat sicut Gamma Græce, ut Gallus.

M. Quare Josephus cum ph (non Jose-fus cum f?

J. Quia ph sicut f semper sonat, & ch sicut k.

M. Quare *Jo-sephus* (non) *Josephus*?

J. Quia consona inter duas vocales posita ad posteriorem pertinet, x vero ad priorem syllabam spectat.

M. Quare scribis Generosus cum G (non) Jenerosus cum J.

J. Quia G ante e i y mollitur sonat sicut jod Hebræoum.

M. *Annus*, quomodo literas formas?

J. *An-nus.* M. Quâ regulâ?

J. Si consona geminetur prior ad priorem, & posterior ad posteriorem syllabam attinet.

M. Princeps unde dividuntur literæ?

J. Prin-ceps (non) princ-eps; quia consonantes quæ in principio dictionis sociari non possunt, nec in medio conjugantur.

M. Tristis unde formantur literæ?

J. Tri-stis (non) Tris-tis, quia consonantes quæ principio dictionis conjungi possunt in medio etiam connectuntur.

M. Recita igitur Catalogum earum consonantium quæ nunquam sunt seperandæ?

J. Ego

J. Yes withal my heart.

Some of these may seem uncouth to the English, yet Authority justifies them, however Use or Custom may prevail to the contrary.

In the English dw, sw, tw.

M. Why *ad-est* he is here (not) a-dest.

J. Because in words compounded, that part compounding, and the part compounded, must be parted.

M. Why is *cor*, the heart, writ with c not k?

J. Because c before a o u sounds like k, and before e i y it is every where sounded like f, with a hissing as, sure, meat, a Swan.

M. Why is lectio a lesson, writ with tio (not) xio, csio nor ccio?

J. Because ti before a vowel usually sounds like si.

M. Doth ti sound every where like si when a vowel follows?

J. No, for it keeps its own proper sound in Greek words made Latine, as, Government.

Also when ti begins a word, it keeps its own sound, as, a turbant.

Also in paragogical infinitives, as, to be sent.

Also when f goes immediately before t, as, a question.

And in vitium, the Genitive Case plural from vitis a vine, to distinguish it from vitium vice.

M. Why do you write audacia with cia (not) sia, nor yet with tia?

J. Because derivative words are spelt with the same letters which their primitives are.

M. From whence is audacia derived?

J. From audax, audacis, bold.

J. Ego vero ac lubens.

bl, bd, br, ch, cl, cm, cn, cr, cf, dr, dm, fl, fr, gl, gn, gr, kn, mn, ph, phth, pl, pr, pf, pt, rh, fc, fcr, fh, fk, fl, fm, fn, fp, fph, fpl, fpr, fq, ft, ftr, th, thr, tl, tm, tn, tr, & Anglice dw, fw, tw.

M. Ad-est (non) a-dest quare?

J. Quia in compositis dictionibus pars singula ex altera est seperanda.

M. Cor cum c (non) k quare?

J. Quia c ante a o u sicut k, sonat & ante e i y tanquam f, cum sibilo ubique proferetur, ut, certus, cibus, cygnus.

M. Quare lectio scribitur cum tio (non) cum xio, nec csio, neq; ccio?

J. Quia ti sequente vocali fere sonat sicut si.

M. Sonatne ti ubique tanquam si dum sequeretur vocali?

J. Non, nam retinet proprium suum sonum in Graecis dictionibus ut, Politia.

In principio etiam dictionis, ut, tiaras.

Item Infinitivis paragogicis, ut, mittier pro mitti.

Similiter quando f, praeponitur t, ut, quaestio.

Et in Genitivo vitium à vitis distinctionis gratià à Nominativo vitium.

M. Quare scribis audacia cum cia (non) cum sia, nec tia?

J. Quia derivativa ad enndum modum primitivorum suas literas formant.

M. Audacia unde dicitur?

J. Audacia derivatur ex audax, audacis.

Of the Quantity of Syllables.

M. What is to be regarded in pronouncing Syllables?

J. Quantity is to be observed.

M. What is quantity?

J. Quantity is that time, or space, or delay, wherein it is pronounced.

M. How manifold is quantity?

J. Quantity is threefold, either it is long, marked over the vowel thus (—).

Or it is short, marked thus (˘).

Or else it is common, that is, either long or short, as we please, and is noted over the vowel thus (:).

M. Of what quantity is e in ventus?

J. e in ventus is long, because a Vowel before two Consonants, or before a double consonant is always long by Position, as, an axle-tree, to take after the Father, the wind, I am above the reach of fortunes malice; in which Verse a in major stands before jod, and o before r and s. &c.

M. Why then is a in patris common?

J. A vowel before a mute is made common, if a liquid follow the mute, as, swift or speedy.

M. Of what quantity is e in Deus?

J. One vowel before another in divers syllables of the same word is always short, as thine, a Son.

1. Except the Genitive and Dative cases singular of the Fifth Declension, when e between the two i's is long, as of, or to a day.

2. Except Genitive cases which

De quantitate Syllabarum.

M. In proferendis syllabis quid est considerandum?

J. Quantitas est notanda.

M. Quid est quantitas?

J. Quantitas tempus est vel illud spacium sive mora quâ syllaba profertur.

M. Quotuplex est quantitas?

J. Triplex. Syllaba vel longa (—) est ut, amare.

Vel brevis. ut legere (˘).

Sive communis modo quasi longa modo brevis, ut patris vel patris prout volumus & hoc modo notatur (:)

M. e in ventus, cujus quantitatis?

J. e in ventus producitur, quia vocalis ante duas consonantes aut duplicem ubique positurâ longa est, ut axis, patrizo, ventus.

Major sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere.

M. a in patris communis est quare?

J. Vocalis ante mutam sequente liquidâ communis redditur ut, volucris.

M. e in Deus cujus quantitatis?

J. Vocalis ante alteram in diversis syllabis ejusdem dictionis ubique brevis est, ut tuus, filius.

1. Excipe Genitivos & Dativos quintae Declinationis e inter geminum i longa fit, ut diei.

2. Excipe Genitivos in ius, ut end

end in ius, as, of one, where i is common.

Altho in alterius of another, i is always short. And in alius of another, i is always long.

3. Except i in fio, to be made or done, which is always long, unless er follows the i, as, I could be made, to be done.

4. One vowel before another in Greek words made Latine, are now and then long, as, a man's name,

M. What quantity is au in aurum, Gold?

J. Every Dipthong, also two Syllables contracted into one, and syllables with an angle over them are long, as, &c. to whom, of the Parents, they have been.

But if a vowel follow, the Dipthong is short, as, praealtus, very high or deep.

M. Of what quantity is a in, &c. a friend.

J. Derivative and compound words have the same time which their primitives and simples have, as, redamo to love again.

Except, &c. a maid un-married, and a bride-maid from, &c. to be married, and also, &c. to swear solemnly, falsly, from juro.

M. Of what quantity is the Preposition de of, or concerning?

J. Of the Prepositions these are always long a, e, de, se, unless a vowel immediately follow them.

2. The compounding Preposition di is also long, unless in, &c. to separate, and eloquent.

3. Pro also is long, except in these, &c. a storm, profane, truly, to speak forth, to proceed, to profess, to run away, banished,

unius, ubi i communis repertur.

Licet in alterius est semper breve. Et in alius semper longum.

3. Excipe i in Fio quod semper longum, nisi sequatur er, ut fieram, fieri.

4. Vocalis ante alteram in Graecis dictionibus subinde longa fit, ut Orpheus.

M. Au in aurum quae quantitas?

J. Omnis Dipthongus, etiam syllaba ex duabus contracta, & syllaba circumflexa longa sunt, ut cui, parentum, fuerunt.

Tamen sequente vocali Dipthongus corripitur ut, praealtus.

M. a in amicus cujus quantitatis?

J. Derivativa & composita primitivorum, & simplicium quantitatem sequuntur, ut redamo.

Excipiendi sunt innuba & pronuba a nubo, dejero etiam & pejero a juro.

M. De praepositio cujus quantitatis?

J. Ex praepositionibus hae ubique producuntur, a, e, de, se, nisi sequitur imediate vocalis.

2. Di etiam longum nisi in dirimo, & disertus.

3. Pro quoque producitur, praeter his procella, profanus, profefecto, profari, proficiscor, profiteor, profugio, profugus, profundus, high

high or deep, a great Grandson, stalk or offspring, a Prophet, to drink to, to make haste, and to wanton.

4. These are common, &c. to run abroad, to waste idly, to nourish or enlarge, to drive off, to keep off.

5. The rest of the Prepositions are short, if position permit.

M. Of what quantity is e in legi?

J. Every perfect tense and supine have the first syllable long, as legi I have read, motum to move.

These are excepted, &c. to cleave, I have drank, given, cut, stood, suffered. To stir up, give, besmear, may or can, suppose, rush, sow and permit.

M. Why is e in cecidi short?

J. Verbs which double the first syllable of the perfect tense, make the first syllable short, as, &c. I have fallen, learned, deceived, bitten, broken wind backwards, weighed, touched, clipped, beat or brayed.

M. I demand the quantity of i in clandestinus?

J. Adjectives ending in inus and osus make the last syllable save one long.

1. Yet these following Adjectives have the last Syllable but one short, &c. of linen, of the cedar-tree, of to morrow, enduring long, of beech, of this year, of an olive-tree, two days hence, of old, of the evening.

2. So also Adjectives signifying the matter, or things made of Metals, as, &c. of chrystal, of myrrh, are short.

M. Of what quantity is a in damus we give.

dus, pronepos, propago, propheta. propino, propero & protervus.

4. Communia sunt procurro, profundo, propago, propello, propulso.

5. Reliquae praepositiones corripiuntur si positio sinat.

M. e in legi cujus quantitatis?

J. Omne praeteritum & supinum priorem habent longam ut, motum.

Excipiendi sunt fidi a findo bibi, dedi, scidi, steti, tuli, citum a cieo, datum, litum, quitum, ratum, rutum, satum & situm.

M. e in cecidi, brevis est, quare?

J. Primum praeteriti geminantia primam itidem brevem habent, ut, cecidi, didici, fefelli, momordi, pepedi, pependi, tetigi, totondi & tutudi.

M. i in clandestinus quantitatem rogo?

J. Adjectiva in inus & osus penultimam producunt.

1. Haec tamen sequentia penultimam corripiunt, carbasinus, cedrinus, crastinus, diutinus, faginus, hornotinus, oleaginus, perendinus, pristinus & serotinus.

2. Sic etiam materialia, sive metallorum a nominibus formata, ut chrystallinus, myrrhinus sunt brevia.

M. a in damus cujus quantitatis?
C
J. The

The diftinguifhing Letters in the Conjugations muft be obferved, namely ā in the firft conjugation is always long, as ātote.

ē in the fecond conjugation is always long, as ēmus, ētote, ēnt.

Except a vowel immediately follows e for then it is fhort, as ĕat.

ĕ in the third conjugation is fhort before r, as ĕrem, ĕretis.

Except the third perfon plural in the perfect tenfe of the active voice, and the fecond perfon fingular in the future tenfe of the indicative mood.

e in the third conjugation is always long if r follow it not.

i in the fourth conjugation is always long, as īmus, ītote.

Unlefs a vowel immediately follows i, and then i is fhort.

Almoft all other fyllables are either long or fhort by ufe and authority of Authors.

Except they be the fyllables which increafe in the Genitive cafe fingular, or fuch as end words.

The increafing fyllable of the Genitive Cafe is for the moft part long or fhort, according to this Draught.

Syllables are long in fuch as in the Genitive increafe in ā, as

ācis, except, &c. a torch, and fome Greek words.

ālis, except, &c. a man's name and falt in.

ānis alfo, and in

āris, except, &c. a Sun-beam, the liver, fweet-wine, equal.

āfis alfo and in

ātis from as, except, anas a duck or drake.

Syllables increafing by ē in the Genitive cafe are long in

J. Literæ characterifticæ conjugationibus femper funt notandæ, viz. ā primā conjugatione eft femper longum, ut, ābo, ārem.

ē fecundā conjugatione femper eft longum, ut ēmus, ēbamus.

Excipe vocalem proxime fequentem e, ut ĕamus, ĕatis, ĕant.

ĕ tertiā conjugatione ante r, eft breve, ut ĕrem, ĕro, ĕre.

Excipe ĕrunt, ĕre, perfecto activæ plurali; & ĕris vel ĕre futuro paffivo indicativi fingularis.

e tertiā non fequente r eft femper longum, ut ēbam, ēbar.

i in quartā conjugatione eft femper longum, ut īnius, īte, īre.

Nifi fequitur immediate vocali ut, ĭam, ĭatis, ĭamur, ĭant.

Omnes ferè relliquæ fyllabæ vel longæ, vel breves funt ufu, & authoritate.

Nifi fint fyllabæ Genitivo crefcentes, five finales.

Syllaba crefcens Genitivo plerunque vel longa, vel brevis, eft fecundum fchema fequente.

Syllabæ funt longæ cujufmodi crefcentibus in ā, ut in

ācis, nifi fax & quædam Græca.

ālis, præter Annibal & fal in.

ānis etiam & in

āris nifi jubar, hepar, nectar & par.

āfis etiam & in

ātis ex as nifi anas anātis.

Syllabæ crefcentes per ē Genitivo longæ funt in   ēcis

ēcis, except nex deftruction, in ēdis, exc. pes a foot, with its Compounds in

ēgis except grex a flock, in ēnis alfo, and in

ētis except, &c. a fir-tree, a ram, a dullard, an expounder, a wall, a coverlid, and thofe which end in es fhort.

ī is long in fuch as increafe in īris, alfo and in

īcis from ix and trix except, &c. an addition, a cup, the hip, fern, an arch, a hedge-hog, a water ferpent, and a vein fwollen.

ō is long in fuch as increafe in ōcis, except over-hafty, and the Names of Countrymen. in

ōdis except a trivet in

ōnis except fome foreign words

ōtis except endued with, unable

ōris from os and or, except wheat, a tree, the Sea, marble, mindful, ftrength and fome *Greek* words increafing by ŏ fhort.

ū is long in fuch as increafe in ūdis, except pecus fmall cattle in ūtis alfo, and in

ūris, exept a diviner, tame, bran, a devourer, muttering, a greedy bird.

Syllables are fhort in fuch as increafe in ă, namely in

ăbis, and alfo in

ădis, and likewife in

ătis, from a, as a Theme.

Syllables increafing in ĕ are fhort in thefe

ĕmis, and alfo in

ĕri, and in the verb ĕris, thou fhalt be, and fome Greek nouns befides aër the air, and æther the fkie.

Syllables increafing in ĭ are fhort in thefe following, namely

ĭcis from ex, and alfo

ēcis nifi nex nĕcis in

ēdis, nifi pes, cum compofitis in

ēgis, nifi grex grĕgis in

ēnis, etiam & in

ētis. nifi abies, aries, hebes, interpres, paries, feges, teges & quæ in es brevi.

In ī crefcentes funt longæ in īris, etiam & in

īcis de ix & trix, præter appendix, calix, coxendix, filix, fornix, hiftrix, natrixq; varix.

In ō crefcentes funt longæ in ōcis nifi præcox et nomina rufticorum in

ōdis, præter tripos tripŏdis in ōnis, nifi quædam peregrina per ŏ ōtis, præter compos & impos ōris ex os & or, excipe ador, arbor, æquor, marmor, memor, robur, et quædam Græca per ŏ crefcentia.

Crefcentes per ū longæ funt, in ūdis, nifi pecus, pecŭdis, in ūtis, etiam & in

ūris, præter augur, cicur, furfur, ligur, murmur, vultur.

Syllabæ funt breves cujus modi crefcentibus in ă, videlicet

ăbis, etiam & in

ădis, item & in

ătis ex a ut, thema themătis

Syllabæ crefcentes in ĕ funt breves in his

ĕmis etiam & in

ĕri etiam verbum ĕris & quædam Græca cum aër & æther

Syllabæ crefcentes in ĭ fequentibus funt breves, viz.

ĭcis de ex, etiam & in

ĭdis, except the Nymph, and a Cities Names.
ĭgis, and also in
ĭnis, except a dolphin, and two Cities names.
ĭri, and also in
ĭtis, except a spear, a samnite
ĭvis, and also in ĭus
Nouns increasing by o are short in the following syllables. in
ŏbis, and also in
ŏgis, likewise in
ŏpis, except a gnat, and the Dropsie
ŏris from ur and us, except a crafty fellow, and a mans name.
ŏvis also, as bŏs bŏvis, an ox
ŭ is short in such as these, which increase in
ŭcis, except Pollux, a mans name
ŭgis, and also in
ŭlis, likewise in
ŭpis, in like manner in ŭris
Nouns increasing by y are short in the following syllables in
ȳbis, and also in
ȳcis, except a silk-worm
ȳgis, and also in yris.

Of the quantity of final or ending Syllables.

M. of what quantity is a in, &c. a subject, or theme.
J. Words ending in a are long. Words excepted are, &c. suppose, even so, because, and every case that ends in a except ablatives of the first declension, as, pennâ, with a pen.
And the vocatives of Greek Nouns, which in the Nominative end in as.
Common are Nouns of number which end in ginta, as, thirty.
M. Of what quantity is e in, halec a herring
J. The vowel before c final is long.

ĭdis, nisi Crenis, Psophis
ĭgis, etiam & in
ĭnis, nisi delphis, Salamis, Trachis.
ĭri, etiam & in
ĭtis, nisi quiris, samnis in
ĭvis, etiam & in
ĭus,
Crescentes in ŏ sunt breves sequentibus in
ŏbis etiam & in
ŏgis item & in
ŏpis nisi conops & hydrops
ŏris ex ur & us, nisi cercops, et cyclops
ŏvis, etiam ut bos, bŏvis.
Crescentes in u, sunt breves sequentibus. in
ŭcis, nisi pollux, pollūcis, in
ŭgis, etiam & in
ŭlis, item in
ŭpis, similiter in ŭris.
Crescentes in y sunt breves sequentibus. in
ȳbis, item & in
ȳcis, præter bombyx, in
ȳgis, etiam & in yris.

De ultimarum Syllabarum quantitate.

M. a in thema cujus quantitatis?
J. Finita in a producunt excipienda sunt putâ, itâ quiâ & omnes casus in a; præter ablativos primæ declinationis.

Et vocativos Græcorum in as, ut Nominativo Thomas, Vocativo Thomâ.
Communia sunt numeralia in ginta, ut triginta.
M. e in halec cujus quantitatis?
J. Vocalis ante c finale producitur.
Short

Short are &c. until, milk, nor.
Common are &c. do it, this Masc.& Neut. provided hoc be not the ablative case.
M. Of what quantity is i in boni good?
J. Words ending in i have that i long.
Short are &c. unless, as though, also Datives and Ablatives of Greekish Nouns as, a womans and a mans name.
Common are &c. there, to me, to himself, to thee, where.
M. Of what quantity is e in splen the spleen?
J. The vowel before n final is long.
Short are &c. or else, but yet, perhaps, or perchance, yet, but yet.
Also in with its compounds as, &c. from thenceforth, and therefore.
Nouns also ending in ĕn in the Nomnative whose Genitive have ĭnis short.
Likewise words which are libd by the figure Apocope as, &c. instead of mene, vidine.
And Greek words ending in on by the short ŏ, also ĭn and yn by i and y and ăn from Nominative cases ending in a.
M. Of what quantity is as in nefas?
J. Words ending in as make the a long. Short are Greek words having dos in the Genitive case singular as, arcăs an Arcadian, whereunto add anăs a duck or drake.
Also Accusatives plural of such as increase in the Genitive case singular as, &c. a Princess, *Phyllis*.
M. Of what quantity is es in facies a face?
J. Words ending in es have ē long.

Brevia sunt donĕc, lăc, nĕc.
Communia sunt fac, hic, & hoc modo casus non sit ablativus.

M. i in boni cujus quantitatis?

J. Finita in i sunt longa.

Brevia sunt nisĭ, quasĭ, Dativi etiam et ablativi Græcorum ut; Phillidĭ, Daphnĭ.

Communia sunt ibi, mihi, sibi, tibi, ubi.

M. e in splen cujus quantitatis?

J. Vocalis ante n finitum producitur,

Brevia sunt ăn, attamĕn, forsăn forsităn, tamĕn, veruntamĕn.

ĭn etiam cum compositis ut; exĭn, proĭn.

Item nomina in ĕn quorum Genitivus ĭnis correptum habent.

Similiter quæ per Apocopen castrantur ut; men' vidin'.

Et Græca in on per ŏ breve in & yn per i & y, ăn etiam a nominativis in a.

M. as in nefas cujus quantitatis.

J. Finita in as sunt longa. Brevia sunt Græca Genitivo singulari dos habentia ut, arcăs, quibus adde anăs.

Accusativi etiam plurales cujusmodi genitivo singulari crescentia ut, Heroĭs, Phyllidăs.
M. es in facies cujus quantitatis?
J. Finita in es sunt longa.
Short

Short are Nouns of the 3 declension which make the laſt ſyllable but one increaſing ſhort as, &c. wealthy, a Souldier, corn growing.

Brevia ſunt nomina tertiæ inflexionis quæ penultimam genitivi creſcentis corripiunt ut, divĕs, milĕs, ſegĕs.

But long of this ſort are &c. a firr tree, a ram, bread corn, a wall and a foot with its compounds as, &c. a pair of fetters.

Sed *longa ſunt; abiēs, ariēs, cerēs pariēs et pēs cum ſuis compoſitis ut, compēs.

Short is ĕs from ſum I am with its compounds, as, &c. thou art preſent, thou art able.

Brevis eſt ĕs a ſum cum compoſitis ut, adĕs, potĕs.

Alſo penes in the power of, and Neuters in the ſingular number, with Nominatives and Vocatives plural of Greek words.

Penĕs etiam et Neutra ſingularia unà cum nominativis et vocativis Græcorum pluralibus.

M. Of what quantity is os in logos a word or ſpeech?

M. os in logos cujus quantitatis?

J. Words ending in os are long.

J. Finita in ōs longa ſunt.

Short are &c. endued with, unable, and ŏs a bone making the Gen. oſſis.

Brevia ſunt compŏs, impŏs et ŏs oſſis.

Alſo Greek words in ŏs which are written by the ſhort ŏ.

Græca etiam in ŏs quæ per ŏ breve ſunt ſcripta.

M. Of what quantity is u in gelu froſt?

M. u in gelu cujus quantitatis?

J. Words ending in u are always produced long.

J. Finita in u ſemper producuntur.

M. Of what quantity is o in amo to love?

M. o in amo cujus quantitatis?

J. o at the end of a word is common.

J. Finita in o communia ſunt.

Long are oblique caſes in o as, &c. to, or in a, or the-good-lord-church.

Longa ſunt caſus obliqui in o ut, bonō, dominō, templō.

Alſo Adverbs in o derived from Adjectives as, &c. falſely, firſt by ſo much the more.

Adverbia etiam in ō ab adjectivis derivata ut, falſò, primò, tantò.

Short are &c. quickly, onely, as, or how.

Brevia vero ſunt citŏ modŏ, quomodŏ.

But ſuch Adverbs making o common are &c. carefully, frequently, interchangably, late in the evening.

Sed communia ſunt ſedulò crebrò, mutuò, ſerò.

Long are words of one ſyllable in ō as, &c. I give, I ſtand, and ergô put for causâ for that reaſon.

Longa ſunt monoſyllaba in ō ut, dō, ſtō, et ergô pro causâ.

Alſo Greek words wrote by ō long, as, the names of two women.

Item Græca per ō longum ut, Didō Sapphō.

Seldom long are &c. both, two, I, man.

Raro ſunt producta ambo, duo, ego, homo.

M. Of what quantity is ut, in caput, the head?

M. Ut in caput cujus quantitatis?

J. The vowel before b, d, t, final, is ſhort. And ſo alſo is e final, as, &c. the Sea.

J. Vocalis ante b, d, t, finita corripitur. Et etiam in e ut marĕ.

Long are Ablatives of the fifth Declenſion, as, &c. in the day, in faith, together with Adverbs deriv'd from dies, as, &c. to day, the day before, daily, to which add famē, in a famine.

Longa ſunt ablativi quintæ inflexionis ut, diē, fidē unà cum adverbijs inde enatis ut hodiē pridiē quotidiē, cui adde famē.

Alſo rē with its compounds are long, as, &c. why, or for what reaſon.

Rē etiam cum compoſitis ut, quarē, i. e. quà de re?

Alſo Imperatives ſingular in the ſecond perſon of the Active voice, and ſecond Conjugation, as, &c. teach thou.

Item Imperativi ſingulares ſecundà perſonà, vocis activæ & ſecundæ conjugationis ut, docē.

Likewiſe Adverbs in e derived from Adjectives, as, &c. certainly, greatly.

Similiter adverbia in ē ab adjectivis derivata ut, certē, valdē.

But ſhort are &c. well, badly.

Corripitur vero, benĕ, malĕ.

Long are words of one ſyllable in ē as, &c. concerning, me, himſelf, thee.

Longa ſunt monoſyllaba in ē ut, dē, mē, ſē, tē.

But ſhort are the inclining conjunctions, &c. leaſt that, and, or.

Sed brevia ſunt Enclitica quĕ nĕ vĕ.

Alſo Greek words ending in ē long, as, &c. a river, and pleaſant fields name.

Græca etiam quæ per ē longum ut, Lethē, tempē.

M. Of what quantity is e in vel, or?

M. Vel cujus quantitatis?

J. The vowel before l final is ſhort.

J. Finita in l dant vocalem præcedentem eſſe brevem.

Long are &c. nothing, the Sun and ſome Hebrew words ending l, as, two names of men.

Longa ſunt nīl, ſōl et Hebræa quædam in l ut, Daniēl Michaēl.

M. Of what quantity is i in vir?

J. The vowel before r final is short.

Long are &c. why, breadcorn, a theif, the hearth, a rivers name, the spring, and, even, and words compounded with par, as, a companion, unlike, unequal.

Also Greek words ending er, as, &c. the air, the skie, but ĕr is short in &c. a father, a mother.

M. Of what quantity is i in anguis a snake?

J. Words ending in is, have i short.

Long are Datives, and Ablatives of the first and second Declension, as, &c. to, or in songs, churches, and also queis put for quibus-which.

Also those which end in is, making long the penult: of the genitive case increasing, as, &c. a Samnite.

Likewise words of one syllable in īs are long, as, &c. strife, strength.

But short are &c. twice, he, who.

Also the second person singular of Verbs ending in is, whose second person plural do end in itis, are long as, &c. thou hearest, thou maist be willing.

M. Of what quantity is us in dominus a Lord?

J. Words ending in us have the ŭ short.

Long are words making long the penult. of the genitive case increasing, as, the earth, or ground.

Also all words of the fourth Declension ending in us, except the nominative and vocative singular.

M. Vir cujus quantitatis?

J. Vocalis ante r finitum breve est.

Longa sunt cūr, far, fūr, lār, Nār, vēr, et pār cum compositis, ut, compār, dispār, impār.

Græca etiam in er, ut, aēr æthēr, in patĕr vero et matĕr ĕr est breve.

M. Is in anguis cujus quantitatis?

J. Finita in is brevia sunt.

Longa sunt dativi et ablativi pluralia primæ et secundæ Declinationis ut, musīs templīs, et queīs etiam pro quibus.

Producentia etiam Genitivi crescentis ut, Samnīs, samnītīs.

Item monosyllabā ut, līs, vīs.

Sed brevia sunt bĭs, ĭs, quĭs.

Similiter secundæ personæ verborum singulares in is, quorum secundæ personæ pluralis definunt in itis ut, audis, velis.

M. Us in dominus quantitatem rogo?

J. In us finita brevia sunt.

Longa sunt producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis ut, tellus, tellūris.

Omnes etiam casus quartæ inflexionis in us, præter nominativi et vocativi singulares.

Also all words of one syllable ending in us, as, &c. a mouse, snot, the country, a sow, frankincense.

And Greek words which are writ by the dipthong oos, as, a man, and a womans name.

Of Words.

M. What is made of Syllables?

J. Of Syllables are made Words.

M. What is a Word?

J. A Word is a comprehension of Letters, and Syllables, whereby mankind are enabled fitly to express their minds one to another.

Of Sentences and Points.

M. And what is composed of Words?

J. Of Words is made Speech or Language.

M. What things are to be observed in the seperating of Speeches?

J. Puncts, or Points are to be minded.

M. What is a Punct or Point?

J. A Point is the seperation of a Speech.

M. How manifold is a Point?

J. It is twofold of an imperfect and of a perfect sentence.

M. Which are the Points of an imperfect sentence?

J. A Comma (,) and half-colon (;)

M. What is a Comma?

J. Comma is a distinction which sustains, or holds up and stays the breath, without taking breath; and is made at the end

---

Item omnia monosyllaba in us ut, mūs, pūs, rūs, sūs, thūs.

Et Græca quæ per dipthongum oos, ut, Panthūs, Sapphūs.

De Vocibus.

M. Ex Syllabis quid fit?

J. Ex Syllabis fiunt voces.

M. Quid est vox?

J. Vox est literarum et syllabarum comprehensio quibus humanas cogitationes alter ad alterum apte exprimere.

De Sententijs et Punctis.

M. Et ex vocibus quid fit?

J. Ex vocibus fit oratio sive locutio.

M. In distinguendis orationibus quæ sunt notanda?

J. Puncta sunt observanda.

M. Quid est Punctum?

J. Punctum est orationis distinctio.

M. Quotuplex est punctum?

J. Duplex, imperfectæ et perfectæ sententiæ.

M. Imperfectæ sententiæ distinctiones quæ sunt?

J. Comma (,) et Semicolon (;)

M. Comma quid est?

J. Comma est distinctio quæ spiritum sine respiratione sustinet ac suspendit, fit etiam in fine dictionis quasi septimas vel

of a word about seven or eight syllables from another Point.

M. What is a Semi or half-colon?

J. Semicolon is a distinction which giveth time to breath, whose place is to possess about half the space between a Comma and a Colon, and half the space between that Colon and a Period.

M. What is the distinction of a perfect Sentence?

J. The distinction of a perfect Sentence is a stop which granteth more time to breath, whereby it may seem to rest or be laid down.

M. How manyfold is the distinction of a perfect Sentence?

J. It is twofold, a Colon (:) and a Period (.)

M. What is a Colon?

J. A Colon which is also called a member, is that whereby a perfect Sentence is divided into two parts; but more plainly, it is a stop whereby the breath is deposed for a longer space than in the former points, and is marked at the foot of a word about eighteen syllables from the last period.

M. What is a Period?

J. A Period is a punct used at the foot of a word when, with a full breath deposited a perfect Sentence is concluded.

M. Are there no more puncts than these?

J. There are no more proper points reckoned but to these we add the Parenthesis ( ) which is a Sentence shut up between two Semicircles, and which if it were omitted, the sense nevertheless would remain whole.

octavas syllabas.

M. Quid est Semicolon?

J. Semicolon est distinctio respirandi, cujus est in dimidio fere spacio inter Comma et Colon; post etiam colon, dimidium occupat spacium erga periodum.

M. Perfectæ sententiæ distinctio quid est?

J. Distinctio perfectæ sententiæ est, quæ respirationem plenioris moræ habet, spiritumque deponit.

M. Quotuplex est distinctio perfectæ sententiæ?

J. Est duplex colon (:) et Periodus (.)

M. Quid est Colon?

J. Colon est quod etiam dicitur membrum, et quo quidem perfecta sententia distinguitur, sed aliter est quo spiritus depositus majori tempore, et potest excidere octendecim syllabarum.

M. Quid est Periodus?

J. Periodus est quando spiritu pleno semper deposito sententia perfecta concluditur.

M. Nonne sunt plures puncti quamties istis.

J. Non proprie enumerantur sed hisce Parenthesis ( ) quod est sententia duabus semilunalis inclusa, quà remotus sermo tamen manet integer.

? The

? The Interrogation is marked with two points, and the higher upwards with a tail downwards.

! The note of Exclaiming against or admiring at is marked on this manner.

- The Hyphen is a note coupling together, and is always to be used when a word is parted at the end of a line, which must always be at the end of a syllable.

§ Section to divide a large discourse into parts.

[ ] Parathesis we use in Expositions.

* The Asterisk in Annotations.

† The Obelus in Versions.

|| Equal lines in Quotations.

" When we cite Authors word by word.

☞ Index points to something of note.

Λ Induction is made under the line to bring in something omitted.

' Apostrophe is used when a letter is left out on purpose, and is made over the line, as, &c. who you?

˙˙ Dialysis is used to part a Dipthong and is made over the Vowels.

¶ Paragraph is an absolute passage or Article.

` The Grave accent we use over a Vowel when the voice is depressed.

' The Acute accent when the voice is to be raised higher.

The Crasis is used over circumflex syllables long by nature.

Also over ablative cases end-

? Interrogatio etiam signatur duobus punctis ac superiore sursum caudato deorsum.

! Exclamatio, ceu admiratio hoc modo signatur.

- Hyphen est nota subunionis et semper utendum cum dictio sit divisa ad extremum lineæ, modo ad finem syllabæ positum.

§ Sectio peramplum sermonem in partes sectare.

[ ] Parathesis utimur expositionibus.

* Asteriscus in annotationibus.

† Obelus in versionibus.

|| Lineæ paralellæ quotationibus.

" Citationibus verbatim.

☞ Index aliquid observare.

Λ Inductio subter lineà est facta aliquid omissum inducere.

' Apostrophus cum de industrià litera sit omissa, et supra lineam notatur ut, tun' pro tune?

˙˙ Dialysis usus est seperare Dipthongum et super vocales signatur.

¶ Paragraphus est sententia vel articulus absolutum.

` Accentus gravis utimur voce depressà et supra vocalem notatus.

' Accentus acutus voce elivatà.

Circumflexus usus est signare syllabam naturà longam.

Item super ablativos in à: et

ing in â, and Genitives in ûs, as, &c.

Genitivos in ûs nt, rosâ, manûs.

Also over ergò when put for causâ for that reason, and over verbs syncopated, as, &c. thou hast loved.

Super ergò etiam pro causâ, et verbis syncopatis ut, amâsti pro amavisti.

Of Figures belonging to Orthographie.

M. How many Figures belong to Orthographie ?

J. Twelve. &c. whose use is cheifly to allow some liberty to Poets, for making their Verses run more smoothly, which they call carminis gratiâ.

M. Give their Explanations together with Examples to illustrate.

J. Prothesis adds a Letter or Syllable to the begining of a Word, and Aphæresis take away a Letter or Syllable from thence, as, &c. born, I have suffered, he plucks up, to dispise, for &c.

Syncope taketh away a Letter or Syllable from the middle of a Word which Epenthesis addeth thereunto, as &c. Religion, laid up, and dixti for dixisti thou hast spoken, &c.

Apocope takes away a Letter or Syllable, from the end of a Word, which Paragoge addeth thereunto, as, &c. of the wit, to a charriot, to be said or spoken.

Antithesis and Antistæchon change one Letter for another, as, &c. to him, of us, the man servant, in doing.

Metathesis misplaceth a Letter, as, for Thymber is writ Thymbre, and in pistris r is misplaced.

De Orthographiæ Figuris.

M. Orthographiæ quot spectant Figuræ ?

J. Duodecim, Prothesis, Aphæresis, Syncope, Epenthesis, Apocope, Paragoge, Antithesis, Antistæchon, Metathesis, Tmesis, Synæresis et Diæresis.

M. Audiamus diffinitiones unà cum Paradigmatis ?

J. Prothesis appoint capiti ; Quod Aphæresis aufert ut, Gnatus tetuli ruit, et non temnere divos, pro natus, tuli, eruit contemnere.

Syncope de medio tollit ; quod Epenthesis infert ut ; Relligio, mavors, jusso, surrexe repostum, pro Religio repositum et dixti pro dixisti.

Aufert Apocope finem quem dat Paragoge. ut ; Ingeni, Hymen, curru, Tyrio vestirier ostro, pro ingenij currui et dicier pro dici. Litterulam Antithesis mutat quod et Antistæchon ut ; Olli, subridens, vostrum, servom, faciundo. Pro illi vestrum, servum, faciendo. Transponitque Elimenta Metathesis, ut, tibi Thymbre pro Thymber, pistris pro pristis.

Tmesis divides or seperates the parts of a compound word, by interposing something between them, as, &c. Those things which please me are placed in the North.

Synæresis contracteth two syllables into one, as &c. swift as the wind, in the beehive, to whom, thin or slender, of the wall, Golden.

Or the hives should have been woven with a slender twig.

Diæresis divideth a syllable or or of one syllable maketh two, as, &c. he might had turned over, brazen, the noise of Bacchus Preists, matter or subject.

They ought to have unwound their spindles.

Compositæ in partes est Tmesis sectio vocis ut,

Quæ mihi cunque placent septem subjecta trioni. Pró quæcunque Septentrioni. Syllaba de binis confecta synæresis esto ut ; Aeripides, alveo, cui, tenuis parietis, aurea

Seu lento fuerint alvaria vimine texta. Pro alveäria. Dividit in binas partita, Diæresis unam ut ; Evoluisset, aheneus, evohe, materiai. Debuerant fusos evoluisse suos. Pro evolvisse, æneus evæ, materiæ.

Of Etymologie.

M. Hitherto concerning the first part of Grammar, namely Orthography, now which is the second ?

J. Etymologie is the second part of Grammar.

M. What is Etymologie ?

J. Etymologie is that part of Grammar which teacheth the Diffinitions, Divisions and Accidents of the parts of Speech or Language.

De Etymologia.

M. Hactenus de primà parte Grammaticæ scilicet Orthographia, quænam est secunda ?

J. Etymologia est secunda pars Grammaticæ.

M. Quid est Etymologia ?

J. Etymologia est quæ Diffinitiones, Divisiones, cum accidentibus partium orationis tractat.

Of the parts of Speech.

M. How many parts of Speech are there ?

J. There are Eight parts of Speech.

M. Neither more nor less ?

J. Yes, just so many.

M. Name those parts of Speech ?

De orationis partibus.

M. Quot sunt partes orationis ?

J. Octo sunt partes orationis.

M. Nec plures nec pauciores ?

J. Maxime, haud aliter.

M. Nomina mihi illas ?

J. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, Adverb, Conjunction, Præposition, Interjection.

M. Are all these Eight parts of Speech varyed or declined?

J. No, the Four first only are declined, and the Four last are invariable or undeclined.

Of a Noun, with what belongs to it.

M. What is a Noun?

J. A Noun is that part of Speech which signifies a Person or a thing.

M. How many sorts of Nouns are there?

J. A Noun is twofold Substantive and Adjective.

M. What is a Substantive?

J. A Substantive is the name of a Person or thing, and which to explain its signification, needeth nothing to be added unto it.

M. How many fold is a Substantive?

J. A Noun Substantive is twofold, Appellative which signifies the name common to all of that kind, as, &c. the head, a book, a father, a bull, a garment, and a city.

And proper which signifies the name attributed to some particular person or thing, as, &c. *Martin, John, Jane, London.*

M. How many are the things which belong to a Noun?

J. Eight things belong to a Noun, Person, Number, Case, Declension, Gender, Comparison, Species and Figure.

J. Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium, Adverbium, Conjunctio, Præpositio, Interjectio.

M. Hæ octo partes orationis suntne omnes declinabiles?

J. Non, quatuor priores tantum sunt declinabiles, et quatuor posteriores sunt inflexibiles.

De nomine cum accidentibus.

M. Quid est Nomen?

J. Nomen est pars orationis quæ vel Personam, aut Rem significat.

M. Quotuplex est nomen?

J. Nomen est duplex, Substantivum, et Adjectivum.

M. Quid est Substantivum?

J. Substantivum est quod nihil addi postulat ad suam significationem exprimendam.

M. Quotuplex est Substantivum?

J. Substantivum est duplex Appellativum quod rem multis communem significat, ut, Caput liber, pater, taurus, vestis et urbs.

Et Proprium quod rem uni individuo propriam significat ut, *Martinus, Johannes, Jana, Londinum.*

M. Quot sunt accidentia nominis?

J. Octo accidunt nomini, Persona, numerus, Casus, Declinatio, Genus, Comparatio, Species, et Figura.

Of Persons.

M. Of what Person is liber a book?

J. Of the Third person because, every Noun, Participle and Whatsoever is put instead of a Substantive are of the Third person, as, &c. thy knowledge.

Of Numbers.

M. How many Numbers are there?

J. Numbers are Two the singular and plural, the singular speaks but of one, as, &c. a boy, the book, a pen.

The plural speaks of more than one, as, &c. two or three boys, books, &c.

M. Manes in the singular number?

J. These Masculines are content with plural number only altho they may seem to signify but one thing.

Ghosts, forefathers, van of an army, monthly visits and posterity.

Children, yearly chronicles, hobgoblings, register books and domestick Gods.

Posterity, also the Gods above, an Ensign of Authority, and graves, also a truce.

To which add note books, with inhabitants of heaven and Romanes.

Nobles, peers, and jests, so also the souls in hell and the limbs.

The nostrils, and preambles, starting place in races, a leger book and the jawes.

Lattices, twins, borders of a countrey many more.

De Personis.

M. Liber cujus Personæ?

J. Tertiæ, quia omne nomen, Participium, et quicquid supplet locum Substantivi sunt tertiæ personæ ut, scire tuum, pro scientia tua.

De Numeris.

M. Quot sunt numeri?

J. Numeri sunt duo, singularis et pluralis, singularis loquitur de uno ut, puer, liber, penna.

Pluralis loquitur de pluribus ut, duo, tres pueri libri, &c.

M. Manes in numero singulari?

J. Mascula hæc tantum numero contenta secundo.

Quamvis certa horum significant modo unum.

Manes, majores, antes, mensesque minores.

Liberi, et annales, lemures, fastique, penates.

Posteri, item superi, fasces, loculique, ferique.

Adde pugillares, cum cælitibusque Quirites.

Primores, proceresque sales, sic inferi, et artus.

Nares, et ambages, carceres, codicillique fames.

Cancelli, gemini fines, plerique plures.

Grandees, each, household gods, demi gods and parentage.

And the names of Cities ending in i as, *Gabij* want the singular.

M. Divitiæ in the singular number.

J. These nouns are of the Feminine gender and plural number only.

Womans towers, funeral cerimonies threatnings, an ambush and a truce.

Relicks, nones, trifles, a booty and the ides of a month.

Refuse things, cradles, curses, gugaws, and devilish sacrifices.

Hollydays, and watches and wards the three furies, horse trappings and Calends.

First fruits, small guts, thanks, folding doors and darkness.

Riches, the three destinies, a cart with four horses, marriages, the *Alps*.

Fair words, the sail yard, a cart with two horses, a citys name, smartness trifles.

Panniers, lurking holes, tythes so also a hills name, a house.

An enticement, and hurdles, raillery, foolery, and the door posts.

The seven stars, doors, baths, learning, and the after-birth.

Scaffolds, deceit, things put off, Estate, and hunters nets.

Riches, names of two Islands, lees of oil, mites, dregs of wine.

The glandules, rough places, name of a city and deceit, sheep coats.

The watch, fetters, an award a besom, aid or help.

Furies, goddesses of the woods, lamentations, Embassadors allowance, stairs.

Optimates, singuli, lares, indigitesque natales.

Nominaque urbium in i carent etiam singulari, ut, *Gabij*.

M. Divitiæ numero singulari?

J. Hæc sunt fæminei generis numerique secundi.

Antiæ, exequiæ, minæ insidiæ induciæque.

Reliquiæ, nonæ, nugæ manubiæ et idus.

Quisquillæ, cunæ diræ, tricæ inferiæque.

Feriæ et excubiæ, furiæ phalaræque, calendæ.

Primitiæ lactes, grates, valvæ, tenebræque.

Divitiæ, parcæ, quadrigæ nuptiæ et *Alpes*.

Blanditiæ, antennæ, bigæ baiæ, argutiæ apinæ.

Clitellæ, latebræ, decimæ, sic exquiliæ, ædes.

Illecebræ, gerræque, facetiæ ineptiæ, et antæ.

Vergiliæque fores, thermæ, literæque secundæ.

Phalæ, officiæ, exuviæ fortunæque plagæ.

Opes, symplegades, fraces minutiæ floces.

Tonsillæ, salebræ, traphæ et præstigiæ, caulæ.

Vigiliæ, compedes, vindiciæ scopæ suppetiæ.

Eumenides, Dryades, lamentæ lautiæ scalæ.

Also

Also the names of Cities ending in es, and æ want the singular.

M. Why doth arma want the singular?

J. These Neuters are read in the plural number, seldom in the singular.

Acts regestred, a campain, weapons posting books, a camp.

Junkets, banqueting, cross ways, rattles, old rags.

Oracles, mountains name, offerings, cradles, and intrails.

The guts, ordinary task, and winter quarters, cottages, a building, dens.

Great works, cottages, cottages, washbals, a whale.

How many, so many, the overplus dowry, fine clothes, offices, exploits.

Forgetfulness, pasture, amulets midriff, pulpets.

Rape leaves, with spoils, embassadours allowance, and rough places, a standing camp.

Vitals, an assembly, grape stones, stripes and privy places.

And wanting the singular you may add the two Greek words signifying pleasant fields and songs.

Also the names of feasts, books, Cities and plays ending in a want the singular, as, a saturnine feast, the Bible, a cities name, and the olympick games.

Also all cardinal nouns of number from two even to infinity are of the plural number only, as, &c. 2, 3, 4, 5, 6.

Also distributives, as, &c. two by 2, three by 3, four by 4.

M. Patientia in the plural number?

Item in es sic in æ urbium, ut, Gades, et Athenæ.

M. Arma caret singulari quare?

J. Rarius hæc primo plurali neutra leguntur.

Acta, æstiva arma, adversaria castra.

Bellaria, repotia, compita crepundia scruta.

Effata, Ceraunia, donaria, cunabila, et exta.

Ilia, justa et hiberna, mapalia, mænia, lustra.

Magnalia, magalia, magaria, magmata Cete.

Quot, tot, parapherna, multitia, munia, gesta.

Oblivia, pascua, præbia, præcordia rostra.

Rapacia cum spolia, lautia et tesqua, stativa.

Vitalia, comitia, vinacea, verberaque virenda.

Nomina græca licet imponas tempe, meleque.

Carent singulari etiam nomina in a Festorum, librorum, urbiumque ludorum, ut;

Saturnalia, Biblia, Bula et Olympia.

Item numeralia cardinalia à duo usque ad infinitum sunt pluralis numeri tantum ut; duo, tres, quatuor, quinque, sex.

Distributivæ quoque ut; bini, terni, quaterni.

M. Patientia numero plurali?

J. Nouns want the plural number whose nature are restrained to the singular only. And such are the Nouns following which commonly want the plural number.

Nouns signifying proper names.

The names of ages of mans life, of arts, spices, flowers, corn, herbs, humors, liquors, metals, minerals, vices, and virtues.

M. Hordeum therefore in the plural.

J. These Nouns are read in the Nomnative, Vocative and Accusative plural only.

Barley, wines, a market, bread corn, mead, burnt wine, a blemish.

The dew, sea, honey, ofspring, winter, countrey, frankincense, hope.

Add also amber, the ground, brass, and fence or meaning, and dirt or mud.

M. Pulvis in the plural number?

J. These Masculines scarcely or never exceed the singular number.

The evening star, the world, sea, dust or powder, shame, the air.

Dung, and moss, blood, mud, sleep, the skie.

Noon or the south, meat and drink, no body, evening, birdlime and fatness.

A womans belt, and smoak, salt, fear, scituation and fear.

An attendant angel, with a prison, a door nail, liveliness the sun paleness, and extravasated blood.

M. Why doth gloria want the plural?

J. Plurali careant quibus est natura coercens.

Et sic sequentia ferè plurali carent.

Nomina propria significantia.

Nomina ætatum, artium, aromatum, florium, granorum, herbarum, humorum, liquorum, metallorum, mineralium, vitiumque virtutum.

M. Hordeum igitur plurali?

J. Tres similes voces tantum hæc pluralia servant.

Hordea, vina, forum, far mulsum, defruta, labes.

Ros, mare, mel, soboles, hyems, rusque, thus, spes.

Electrum, adde solum, æs, et sensumque lutumque.

M. Pulvis in numero plurali?

J. Mascula hæc numerum vix excedentia primum.

Hesperus, et mundus, pontus pulvis, pudor, aer.

Fimus, et muscus, sanguis limus, sopor, æther.

Meridies, penus, nemo vesper viscus et adeps.

Cestus, et fumus, sal, metus situsque timor.

Genius, cum carcer, clavus & vigor sol, pallor et, cruor.

M. Gloria caret plurali quare?
J. These

J. These singulars of the Feminine Gender are seldom read in the plural.

Glory, riches, health, maturity, pitch, like for like, a cough.

Melancholy, the ground, a flight, a fault, infection, the earth.

Light, quietness, an offspring, and an offspring, memory, a consumption.

Fame, a murrain, death, a pile or stack, choler, thirst and the paunch.

Poverty, common people, rest, peace, galls, towardliness and a spot.

A beard, the skin, sand, a hogstye, ulcerous matter, fine speeches, plagues.

Phlegm, slaughter, health, a pedigree, life and age.

As also all Nouns of the fifth Declensions, except &c. a matter, form or shape, the face, and an edge and the day.

M. Why doth pus want the plural?

J. Neither may we give the plural number to these neuters.

Corruption, a milk vessel, a throne, nothing, glew, and shambles.

A bewitching, black speck of a bean, salt petre, hay, and old age.

The Sea, ivory, common people, brawny skin, skirwort and a soil.

A liver, an age, a withy, corrupt blood, a herring, and a muster roll.

Death, so dirt, any deep place, salt, and clay.

A vacation, glass, the spring, birdlime, frost and metheglin.

J. Singula fæminei generis pluralia raro.

Gloria, gaza, salus, pubes, pix, talio, tussis.

Bilis, humus fuga, culpa, fames, contagio, tellus.

Lux, requies, proles, sobolesque memoria tabes.

Fama, lues, mors, strues, cholera et sitis alvus.

Paupertas, plebs, quies, pax, galla, indole, labes.

Barba, cutis, arena, hara, sanies, loculentia pestis.

Pituïta nex, valetudo, prosapia vitaque ætas.

Ut et omnia quintæ inflexionis, Excipe res, species, facies, aciesque diesque.

M. Pus caret plurali quare?

J. Nec licet his neutris numerum deferre secundum.

Pus, sinum, folium, nihilum, glutenque, macellum.

Fascinium, hilum, nitrum, fænum, seniumque.

Pelagus, ebur, vulgus, callum siser atque solum.

Hepar ævum, siser, tabum halec et album.

Lethum, sic cænum, barathrumque sal, lutum.

Justitium, vitrum, ver, viscum geluque mustum. B 2 A

A sunbeam, right, meat and drink, a villain, milk, a sheep-hook, poison, gaul, the salt sea and safron.

Concerning Cases.

M. How many cases are there?

J. Cases are six in each number.

M. Name them to me?

J. The Nominative, Vocative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative and Ablative.

M. What is Case?

J. Case is the proper termination of a Noun, Pronoun, or Participle by which it swerves from the Nominative.

M. How manyfold is Case?

J. Case is twofold the Nominative and Vocative, which are called right cases, because for the most part they have a right and like termination.

The Genitive, Dative, Accusative and Ablative are called oblique cases, because they have oblique and diverse terminations or endings.

M. How is a Case known?

J. To the question who or what? is answerd by the Nominative case, whose property is to come before a Verb, and usualy hath the signs, a, the, an before it in English.

The Vocative hath the Interjection O expressed or understood, both in English and Latine.

To the question whose? or whereof? is answerd by the Genitive case, and in English hath the sign Of, before it or s after it.

Jubar, fas, penum, nefas, lac pedum, virus, fel, salum & crocum.

De Casibus.

M. Quot sunt casus?

J. Casus sunt sex utroque numero.

M. Audiamus illos?

J. Nominativus, Vocativus, Genitivus, Dativus, Accusativus et Ablativus.

M. Quid est Casus?

J. Casus est terminatio peculiaris Nominis, Pronominis, vel Participij de quà Nominativo rerecedit.

M. Quotuplex est Casus?

J. Duplex Nominativus et vocativus qui dicuntur recti quia plerumque habent rectam, et similem terminationem.

Genitivus, Dativus, Accusativus et Ablativus dicuntur obliqui quia terminationes obliquas et diversas habet.

M. Unde dignoscitur casus?

J. Ad quæstionem qui? vel quid? respondetur per nominativum.

Vocativus habet O expressum vel intellectum.

Ad quæstionem Cujus? respondetur per Genitivum.

To the question to whom? or to what? is answered by the Dative case; and in English hath the sign to, and for, the profit or hurt of any thing.

To the question whom? or what? is answered by the Accusative case whose property is to follow a Verb, with the signs a, the, in English.

The Ablative case hath a Preposition either expressed or understood which in English are at, by, for, from, in, on, thrô, with, than after an Adjective of the Comparative degree, and of after a verb passive.

M. Of what case is nequam?

J. Nequam is of every case.

M. By what Rule?

J. Nouns which are varyed into no case, but are applyed to every case, you shall call Aptotes, and they are these, &c.

Naught, so many, just so many, as many, how many soever, a few, need.

A pound weight, lawful, an execrable deed, nothing, nothing, proportion, an ill habit.

Necessary, needful, the palm, top of a corn ear, venom, a den, the hollow of the hand or foot, herb nigella.

Thrifty, gum, half, ones possession, nought and mustard.

A Ballad, a thousand, pleasant feilds, an onion, delightful, a whale, the morning, the latine.

A rug, a manger, a cities name, a horn, the frost, a knee, a spit.

Of this sort, of this kind, of what sort, of what sort soever.

Of what quality soever, of what manner soever, of every sort.

Ad quæstionem Cui? respondetur per Dativum.

Ad quæstionem Quem? respondetur per Accusativum.

Ablativus habet Præpositionem expressam vel intellectam.

M. Nequam cujus Casûs?

J. Omnium est casuum.

M. Per quam regulam?

J. Quæ casum nullum variant Aptota vocabis, ut sunt.

Nequam, tot, totidem, quot quotcunque, aliquot, opus.

Pondo, fas, nefas, nil, nihil, instar, cacoethes.

Necesse, necessum, hir, frit, virus, specus, subtal, git.

Frugi, gummi, semi, mancipi, nihilique, sinapi.

Mele, mille, tempe, Cœpe, volupe, cete, mane, latine.

Gausape, præsepe, astu pro urbe, cornu, gelu, genuq; veru.

Hujuscemodi, hujusmodi, cujusmodi, cujusdammodi.

Cujuscujusmodi, cujusmodicunque, cujusquemodi.

Of the same sort, such like, of the same quality, of that sort.

Of the same sort, or such, of another manner.

But some of these Aptotes are read in the Plural, as, knees.

Also Aptotes are Cardinal Nouns of number from four to a hundred inclusive, as, 4, 5, 6, 7.

Likewise all names of Letters, as, &c. the names of two Greek and two Hebrew Letters.

Also the Orders of Angels, as, the order Cherubims, Seraphims.

And Barbarous names, as, *Adam, Seth, Noe.*

Likewise the names of Towns ending in i and y, as, &c. the names of two Cities or Towns.

And whatsoever is put instead of a Substantive, as, &c. another day.

M. Of what case is incitas?

J. It is of the Accusative case, and plural number only because those Nouns are called Monoptotes, which are applyed to one case only, namely.

N. able, hopeless, fulness, condemned. Gen. of a form or fashion, of a thing of nought. Dat. dispight, a dividing, a deceiving, a putting on, mockery, a mocking, by the index. Ac. twice folded, thrice folded, a denial, a straight places below, banishment, renown, a pedigree. Voc. o brave. Abl. a sending for, a summoning, a warning, an avouching, an appointment, constraint, an allowing, a granting and &c. in the day, light, for the cause, a dashing against, relying upon, a command, want of a charge, without counsel, an instinct, the will, a

Ejuscemodi, ejusmodi, ejusdammodi illiusmodi.

Istiusmodi, aliusmodi vel alimodi.

Horum vero nonnulla plurali leguntur ut, genua, genuum.

Aptota etiam sunt Numeralia Cardinalia à quatuor usque ad centum, ut, quatuor, quinque, &c.

Item nomina literarum. ut, Alpha, Omega, Aleph, Tau.

Ordines etiam Angelorum, ut, Cherubim, Seraphim.

Barbara etiam nomina, ut, *Adam, Seth, Noe.*

Item nomina Oppidorum in i et y ut, Illiturgi, Dory.

Et quicquid vice substantivi positum ut, aliud cras (pro) alius dies.

M. Incitas cujus casûs?

J. Est accusandi casûs et pluralis numeri tantum, quia,

Esto Monoptoton casu quod flectitur uno, vidilicet.

N. Potis pote, expes, satias, damnas. Gen. Dicis, nauci. Dat. Despicatui, divisui, frustratui, indutui, ludificatui, ostentui, venui. Ac. Bilicem, trilicem, inficias, incitas, inferias, fugas, famas, Prosapias. Voc. Macte Pl. macti. Abl. Accitu, accersitu, admonitu, affatu, allegatu, coactu, concessu, datu & diu, lucu, ergò pro die, luce, causâ, flictu fretu, jussu, injussu, inconsultu, instinctu, libitu mandatu, missu monitu, natu, noctu, peccatu, permissu, precatu, promptu, oratu, hortatu, objectu, relatu, vocatu, invitatu, ingratijs.

war-

---

warrant, a sending away, ... ing by birth, by night, by ... time, by leave, by request, in ... liness, by praying, by advising, by opposing, by reporting, by calling, by bidding to, in spite of ones teeth.

M. Decline Vesper?

J. N. the evening. Ab. in the evening. The plural is entire.

M. By what rule?

J. Diptotes are varied in or applyed to two cases only, namely.

Nom. Chance, the evening.

Ablat. By chance in the evening.

Gen. Of briberies, of a stripe, of an acre, of the inward part of the thigh, of ones own accord, of blood corrupt. Abl. in the same.

Gen. Of help. Ac. the succors.

Ac. the request. Abl. with asking.

Dat. to derision, to a wedding, to a pretense.

Abl. at, by, for, from, &c. the same.

M. N. and Ac. so much. Gen. of so much. By what rule?

J. Some Nouns are varied in three cases only in the singular, and some are Triptotes in the plural number, as;

Dat. to the opinion. Ac. the will.

Abl. in the judgment.

M. Decline impes?

J. N. violence. Gen. of violence. Ab. by force. Plur. with forces. M. By what rule?

J. They call those Nouns Tetraptotes which are varied in 4 cases only, as, N. a Controversie. Ac. the action. Abl. in the cause. Ac. processes.

M. Vesper inflecte?

J. N. Vesper. Ab. vespere habet pluralem.

M. Quâ regulâ?

J. Casibus et tantum variant Diptota duobus, viz.

N. Fors, Vesper.

Ab. forte, vespere vel vespiri.

Gen. Repetundarum, verberis, jugeris, fæminis, spontis, tabi. Ab. Repetundis verbere jugere, femine sponte, tabo.

G. Suppetiæ. Ac. Suppetias.

Ac. Rogatum. Ab. Rogatu.

Dat. irrisui, nuptui, obtentui.

Abl. irrisu, nuptu, obtentu.

M. N. Ac. tantundem. G. tantidem perquam regulam?

J. Flecte tribus primo, quædam Triptota secundo, ut,

D. Arbitratui. Ac. Arbitratum.

Ab. Arbitratu.

M. Impes inflecte?

J. N. Impes. G. impetis. Ab. impete, impetibus.

M. Quâ regulâ?

J. Tetraptota vocant casus quæ quatuor optant ut, N. dica. Ac. dicam. Ab. dicà. Ac. dicas.

N. no

N. no body. Da. to no body. Ac. no body. Abl. with no body.

M. Grates in the Genitive case plural?

J. It hath none.

M. By what rule?

J. Those Nouns are called Pentaptotes which want one case in either number as,

Wanting the Genitive case plural are &c. dregs, cells in honey combs, a mouth, and the sun, brafs and the sea.

Wanting the Dative case singular are &c. more, power.

Wanting the Nom. singular are &c. G. of delicate meat, of authority, of fruit, of wealth, of a prayer, of the foremost, of a governour, filthiness, stead of another.

Nouns of asking a question, also nouns without limitation, and Pronouns usualy want the Vocative case.

Except &c. mine, our, our countrey man, and thou.

Wanting the Gen. and Dat. singular are &c. a mustiness.

Ab. &c. a deceitful tale, a hurdle, the chaps, have the plural intire.

Hyems, The winter, wants the Dat. and Ab. plural.

Of Declensions.

M. What is Declension?

J. Declension is the declining of a Noun according to the case, and they are five in number.

M. How is Declension known?

J. By the ending of the Nom. case sing. and are distinguished one from another by the Gen.

N. Nemo. D. Nemini. Ac. neminem. Ab nemine.

M. Grates Genitivo plurali?

J. Caret.

M. Per quam regulam.

J. Pentaptota quibus tibi casus quinque superfunt ut,

Carent Genitivo plurali fæx grates, os oris et sol, æs et mare.

Carent Dat. singulari plus, vis.

Carent Nom. singulari, Dapis, ditionis, frugis, opis, precis, primoris, proceris, sordisque, vicis.

Interrogativa etiam Indiffinita & Pronomina fere carent vocativo

Præter meus, noster, nostras, et tu.

Caret G. et D. Singulari situs.

Ab. Ambage, crate, fauce habent pluralem.

Caret D. et Ab. Plurali Hyems.

De inflexionibus.

M. Quid est Declinatio?

J. Declinatio est flexio nominis secundum casum et sunt numero quinque.

M. Unde dignoscitur inflexio?

J. Ex Nominativi et Genitivi singularis terminationibus.

M. The

M. The first Declension how many terminations in the Nom. singular?

J. It hath four terminations in the Nom. case a, e, as, es, and makes the Genitive in æ.

M. Give an Example in a?

J. Aqua water, aquæ of water.

M. In e? An abrigement of an abrigement.

M. In as? Æneas is a mans name.

M. In es? And so is Anchises.

M. How many terminations in the Nom. hath the second Declension?

J. It hath eight, er, eus, ir, on, os, um, ur, us, and make the Genitive in i.

M. Give an Example in er?

J. Puer a boy; pueri of a boy.

M. In eus? is a mans name.

In ir? a man, of a man.

In on? a lute, of a lute.

In os? a saying, of a saying.

In um? a great stone, of a &c.

In ur? full of meat, &c.

In us? a lord of a lord.

M. How many endings hath the third Declension in the Nom. case?

J. It hath twelve, a, c, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, x, and hath the Genitive case ending in is.

M. Give an Example in a?

J. A decree, of a decree.

M. In c? milk, of milk.

In d? *David*, of *David*.

In e? the sea, of the Sea.

In i? mustard undeclined.

In l? salt, of salt.

In n? grass, of grass.

In o? a speech, of a speech.

In r? a spur, of a spur.

In s? a stone, of a stone.

Prima Declinatio quot habet terminationes?

J. Nominativo quatuor habet a, e, as, es, et dat Genitivum in æ.

M. Da mihi Exemplum in a?

J. Aqua, aquæ.

M. In e? Epitome Epitomes.

M. In as? *Æneas, Æneæ.*

M. In es? *Anchises, Anchise.*

M. Secunda declinatio nominativo quot habet terminationes?

J. Octo habet er, eus, ir, on, os, um, ur, us, et, dat Genitivum in i.

M. Redde Exemplum in er?

J. Puer pueri.

M. In eus? *Orpheus Orphei.*

In ir? vir, viri.

In on? barbiton, barbiti.

In os? logos, logi.

In um? saxum, saxi.

In ur? satur, saturi.

In us? Dominus domini.

M. Tertia declinatio quot habet terminationes in Nominativo?

J. Duodecim habet a, c, d, e, i, l, n, o, r, s, t, x, et dat Genitivum in is.

M. Redde paridigma in a?

J. Dogma dogmatis.

M. In c? lac, lactis.

In d? *David, Davidis.*

In e? mare, maris.

In i? sinapi aptoton.

In l? sal, salis.

In n? gramen graminis.

In o? sermo, sermonis.

In r? calcar, calcaris.

In s? lapis, lapidis.

F In

In t? the head, of the head.
In x? a-flock, of the flock.

M. How many endings hath the fourth Declension in the Nominative case?

J. It hath two endings, in us and u, it also makes the Genitive case in us and u, for example, &c. a hand, a knee.

M. How many endings hath the fifth Declension in the Nominative case?

J. It has but one ending in es, as, &c. a day, and makes the Genitive end in ei, as, &c. of a day.

M. Give me the Genitive case singular of the first, second, third, fourth and fifth Declension?

J. æ, i, is, ûs, ei.

M. Rehearse the endings of the Dative case singular of the 1, 2 3. 4 and 5 declension?

J. æ, o, i, ui, ei.

M. Give the the Accusative singular of the 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 Declension?

J. am, um, em, um, em.

M. How endeth the Ablative singular of the 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 Declension?

J. à, o, e, u, e.

M. Give the Genitive case plural?

J. arum, orum, um, uum, erum.

M. Give the Dative case plural?

J. is, is, bus, ibus, ebus.

M. Why doth filia in the Nominative make filia in the Vocative?

J. Because the Vocative case is like the Nominative in every Declension, and the Ablative plural is also like the Dative.

M. Filia in the Dative and Ablative plural? J. Filiabus.

In t? caput, capitis.
In x? grex, gregis.

M. Quarta declinatio nominativo quot habet terminationes?

J. Duas habet in us et u, dat etiam Genitivum in us et u, Exempli gratià manus genu.

M. Quinta declinatio Nominativo quot habet terminationes?

J. Unam habet in es, ut, dies & dat Genitivum in ei ut, diei.

M. Dic mihi Genitivum singularem, primæ, secundæ, tertiæ, quartæ et quintæ inflectionis?

J. æ, i, is, ûs, ei.

M. Recita terminationes Dativi singularis 1 æ, 2 æ, 3 æ, 4 æ et 5 æ inflexionis?

J. æ, o, i, ui, ei.

M. Redde accusativum singularem 1, 2, 3, 4 & 5 æ. inflexionis?

J. am, um, em, um, em.

M. Quomodo mittit Ablativum singularem 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 æ Decl.

J. à, o, e, u, e.

M. Dic Genitivum pluralem?

J. arum, orum, um, uum, erum.

M. Redde Dativum pluralem?

J. is, is, bus, ibus, ebus.

M. Filia in vocativo filia quare?

J. Quia vocativus similis est Nominativo; et Ablativus Pluralis etiam Dativo.

M. Filia in Dativo et Ablativo plurali? J. Filiabus. M.

M. Why?

J. The soul, an ass, both, two, a goddess, a mistress, a mare, a maid servant, a daughter, a free woman, a she mule, a daughter, a companion, a maid servant, a fellow maid servant make abus (not) is, in the Dative and Abl. plural?

M. Dominus in the vocative?

J. Domine.

M. By what rule?

J. From us of the second Declension is made the vocative in e.

M. Why then doth Deus make Deus in the vocative case?

J. Because Deus God hath Deus in the voc. and meus make mi in the masculine gender.

M. *Georgius George* in the vocative?

J. *Georgi* o *George* because proper names in ius make the vocative in i, so also filius a son, and Genius a disposition make the voc. in i.

M. Agnus in the vocative case?

J. Agne and agnus because, &c. a lamb, a quire, a river, a grove, people, and the common people make the vocative both in e and us.

M. How doth unus end in the Genitive?

J. Unius and uni in the Dative because &c. another, another, one or the other, neither, none, alone, whole, one and any.

Whether, both, which you will, also the pronouns, &c. he, the same, he that, do make the Genitive by ius and the Dative by i in every Gender.

M. Problema a proposition in the Dative case plural?

M. Quâ regulà?

J. Anima, asina, ambæ, duæ, dea, domina, equa, famula, filia, liberta, mula, nata, socia, serva et conserva in Dativo et Ablativo plurali abus habent.

M. Dominus in vocativo?

J. Domine.

M. Perquam regulam?

J. Ab us secundæ declinationis fit vocativus in e.

M. Deus in vocativo Deus quare?

J. Quia Deus, in vocativo habet Deus, et meus masculino mi.

M. *Georgius* in vocativo?

J. *Georgi* quia propria nomina in ius faciunt vocativos in i, sic etiam filius dat fili et genius geni?

M. Agnus in vocativo?

J. Agne et agnus quia agnus, chorus, fluvius, lucus, populusque vulgus faciunt vocativam in e et us.

M. Unus in Genitivo?

J. Unius et Dativo uni quia alius, alter, alteruter, neuter, nullus, solus, totus, unus et ulius.

Uter, uterque, utervis pronomina etiam ille, ipse, iste Genitivum per ius et Dativum per i in omni genere faciunt.

M. Problema in Dativo plurali? J. Pro-

J. Problematis and problematibus because Neuters in a make the Dative and Ablative plural in is and ibus.

M. Problema in the vocative and accusative? J. Problema.

M. In the Nominative plural?

J. Problemata because Neuters have three cases alike in both numbers, namely the Nominative, Vocative and Accusative, which three cases in the plural number always end in a.

But ambo both and duo two make those three cases plural in o.

M. Doth the Accusative case singular of the third Declension always end in em, the Ablative in e, and the Genit. plural in um?

J. No, for Nouns not encreasing in the Genitive case usually make the Accusative in im, as, tuffis a cough make tuffim in the Accusative.

Which with Neuters ending in al, ar, e, make the Ablative in i as, with a cough, with salt, bread corn from tuffis, fal, far.

Which with Nouns ending in ns, rs, and x, usualy make the Genitive plural in ium, as &c. a tooth, a lot, a flock, do make &c. in the Genitive.

With several others which must be observed as they occur.

There are some Nouns which make the Accusative both in em and im, also the Ablative both in e and i which must likewise be noted on occasion.

Jecur the liver, has two endings in the Genitive Case.

M. Decline Jesus?

J. N. Jesus, Ac. Jesum in other cases Jesu.

M. Ancilium in the Genitive plural?

J. Problema-tis et-tibus quia neutra in a faciunt Dativum et Ablativum pluralem in is et ibus.

M. Problema in Vocativo et Accusativo? J. Problema.

M. In Nominativo plurali?

J. Problemata quia neutra habent tres similes casus, Nominativum Vocativum et Accusativum qui in plurali semper desinunt in a.

Ambo vero et duo dant neutrum in o.

M. Mittitne semper tertiæ declinationis accusativum in em. Ablativum in e et Genitivum pluralem in um?

J. Non, nam nomina non crescentia Genitivo fere faciunt, Accusativum in im ut, tuffis dat Accusativo tuffim.

Quæ cum neutris in al, ar, e, dat Ablativum in i ut, tuffi fali, fari, ex tuffis fal, far.

Quæ cum nominibus in ns, rs, et x, fere faciunt, Genitivum pluralem in ium ut, dens, fors, grex, faciunt dentium, fortium, gregium.

Cum multis alijs quæ funt usu discenda.

Certa funt quæ dant Accusativum in em et im Ablativum etiam in e et i usu etiam discenda.

Jecur Genitivo, dat jecoris & jecinoris.

M. Inflecte Jesus?

J. N. Jesus, Ac. Jesum cæteris Jesu.

M. Ancilia Genitivo plurali (

J. A

J. A short sheild, tributes or taxes, feasts of Bacchus, feasts of Saturn have the Genitive &c.

A needle, limbs, an arch, delivery, a haven, a den, a stock or root in the Dative and Ablt. cases plural have ubus (not) ibus.

M. Say all the Declensions with an Example upon each?

J. That I will do presently.

M. Audiamus praxin hujus tabulæ J. Exercitium horæ primæ die Lunæ matutino tempore.

J. Terminationes Primæ [secundæ tertiæ quartæ, quintæ] declinationis cumparadigmate.

Numero Singulari.

N. in a ut norma a Ruler
V. in a ut norma o Ruler
G. in æ ut normæ of a Ruler
D. in æ ut normæ to a Ruler
Ac. in am ut normam the Ruler
Ab. in à ut norma with the Ruler

Numero Plurali.

N. in æ ut normæ Rulers
&c. per omnes casus, et inflectiones.

M. Titan in the Accusative case? J. Titana.

M. By what rule?

J. Greek words made Latine retain their own method in declining; according to this table. But if any of them have a plural number, it is regular by the first table.

Verbi Gratia.

Exercitium horæ primæ die martis matutino tempore.

J. Ancilia, vectigalia Bachanalia, Saturnalia dant um, et orum.

Acus, artus, arcus, partus, portus, specus tribus in Dativo et Ablativo plurali habent ubus.

M. Di omnes Declinationes cum paradigmate?

J. Hoc puncto temporis agam.

Numero Singulari	Nom.	V.	Ge.	D.	Ac.	Ab.
1	Norm-a	a	æ	æ	am	à
2	Nid-us	e	i	o	um	o
3	Anser	er	is	i	em	e
4	Fruct-us	us	ûs	ui	um	u
5	Faci-es	es	ei	ei	em	e

Numero Plurali	Nom.	V.	Ge.	D.	Ac.	Ab.
1	Norm-æ	æ	arum	is	as	is
2	Nid-i	i	orum	is	os	is
3	Anser-es	es	um	ibus	es	ibus
4	Fruct-us	us	uum	ibus	us	ibus
5	Faci-es	es	erum	ebus	es	ebus

M. Titan in Accusativo?

J. Titana.

M. Quà regula?

J. Græca inflectendo Græcorum retenent formam; secundum hoc speculum; si vero quodlibet habet pluralem regulariter variatur per speculum superius.

Pii

Primâ Inflectione.

N. *Æneas, Epitome, Anchises*
V. *Ænea, Epitome, Anchise* vel *a*
G. *Æneæ, Epitomes, Anchisæ*
D. *Æneæ, Epitome, Anchisæ*
Ac. *Æneam* vel *Ænean, Epitomen, Anchisen*
Ab. *Ænea, Epotome, Anchise* vel *Anchisa,* &c.

Note all such Greekish words are either of the 1, 2 or 3 Declension.

	Nom.	IV.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	A.
1	as	a	æ	æ	am,an	a
	e	e	es	e	en	e
	es	e,a	æ	æ	en	e,a
2	eus	eu	ei, eos	ei	ea,con	eo
	on	on	i	o	on	o
	os	os	i	o	on	o
3	an	an	anos	ani	ana	ane
	as	a	antos	anti	anta	ante
	er	er	eros	eri	era	ere
	is	i	idos	idi	ida, in ide	ide
	o	o	ûs	o	o	o

(Numero Singulari)

M. Of what Declension is Grammar?

J. It is of the first Declension in the singular number, but of the second in the plural, and so are all names of Sciences commonly declined, *viz.* Ethica, Physica, Dialectica, Rhetorica, &c.

Both by the first and third Declension are varyed, &c. the names of five men, Easter, and a form.

Both by the second and third Declension are varyed &c. *Vulcan,* a mediator, and Nouns ending in es coming from Greek Nominatives in eus and es, as, &c. names of men, but e is taking away in the Genitive case, in en away in the Genitive case, in those which come from es, as, *Herculi* (not) *Herculei* &c.

Both by the second and fourth Declension have commonly been varyed, &c. regard, a bow, the tide, meat, exercise, a beech, surlinefs, a wave, a sigh or sob, the ground, a bed, bewailing, preparation, delivery, a fishing, a haven, a complaint, sleep, a sound, juice, a whispering, expences, a muttering, a tumult, the wind the common people, &c.

M. Grammatica cujus inflexionis?

J. Est Primæ singulari secundæ vero plurali quia nomina artium ita fere variantur ut, N. Grammatice vel Grammatica &c. N. P. Grammatica Grammaticorum &c.

Per primum et tertiam variantur *Calchas, Chremes, Laches, Orestes, Orontes,* Paschaque schema.

Per secundam et tertiam variantur muliciber, sequester, et nomina in es ex Græcis in eus et es ut, *Ulisses, Achillis, Hercules, Pericles, Periplectomenes, Ariobarzanes, Aristotoles, Demosthenes, Euripides* Dempto e Genitivo, adde *Oedipus, Polipus, Glomus, Vesper.*

Per secundam et quartam variata fere fuerunt adspectus arcus, æstus cibus, exercitus, fagus, faltus, fluctus, gemitus, humus, lectus, luctus, ornatus, partus, piscatus, portus, quæstus, somnus, sonus, succus succurrus, sumptus, strepitus, tumultus, ventus vulgus, &c.

Both

Both by the third and fourth Declension are varied, &c. a den provision, chaff or a needle.

Both by the third and fifth Declension are varied, &c. hunger, yeomentry, and quietness.

Both by the second and fourth Declension in the Genitive and Ablative cases singular. Also in the Nominative and Accusative plural are &c. a distaff, a corneil tree, a bay tree, and a pine tree, in all other cases they are of the second only.

And Domus a house in the vocative singular: Also in the Nom. Vocat. Dat. and Abl. plural is declined by the fourth Declension.

M. What difference is there between the Genitive case domi, and domus?

J. Domi is ones habitation or dwelling, as, I am at home; but domus is any building, as, part of the house is fallen down.

M. What is the difference between domi, and domo, both signifying at?

J. A Person may be at home, altho not in the house, and so contrary.

A Person may be in a house who is not at home, for example,

When the Master of the house is in his Garden, he is at home but not in the house. And when he is in the house of a stranger he is not at home.

Per tertiam et quartam inflectuntur, specus, penus, et acus.

Per tertiam et quintam variantur fames, plebes et requies.

Per secundam et quartam in Genitivo et Ablativo singulari. Nominativo etiam, et Accusativo plurali sunt colus, comus, laurus, pinus, cæteris tantum secundæ.

Domus etiam in vocativo singulari, Nominativo etiam Vocativo, Dativo et Ablativo plurali per quartam inflectitur, Cæteris et secundæ et quartæ dicitur.

M. Quænam est differentia inter domi et domûs?

J. Domi habitatio est ut, sum domi, domûs vero est ædificium ut, pars domûs ruit.

M. Quid differentiæ inter domi et domo?

J. Potest quis esse domi qui non est domo, et vice versâ.

Potest quis esse domo qui non est domi, exempli gratia.

Cum paterfamilias est in horto suo est domi, sed non in domo. Et cum est in domo peregrini non est domi.

Of Genders.

M. What is Gender?
J. Gender is the distinguishing of Sex.

De Generibus.

M. Quid est genus?
J. Genus est sexûs discretio.
M. How

M. How many Genders are there?

J. Genders of Nouns are three.

M. Name them to me?

J. The Masculine, Feminine and Neuter.

M. How is Gender known?

J. Genders are known either by the signification or by the Declension.

M. What part of speech is *Apollo*?

J. It is a noun Substantive

M. What sort of a Substantive.

J. It is a noun Substantive proper.

M. And what kind of a proper Substantive?

J. It is the proper name of the God of Wisdom.

M. Of what Gender is *Apollo*?

J. It is of the Masculine Gender.

M. And how do you know that?

J. Masculines are the names of Gods, Angels, men, People of several countreys, rivers, months, mountains, winds and names which are attributed to the male kind only, as &c. God of wisdom, a good Angel, Sathan, *Martin*, *John*, a Turk, the Thames, April, a mountain in *Asia*, the west-wind, a Cock, a Father, a Bull.

M. Of what Gender is *Jana Jane*?

J. It is of the Feminine Gender?

M. By what rule?

J. Feminines are the names of Goddesses, muses, women, trees,

M. Quot sunt genera?

J. Genera nominum sunt tria.

M. Nomina mihi illa?

J. Masculinum, Foemininum et Neutrum.

M. Quomodo dignoscitur genus?

J. Genera vel dignoscuntur per significationem vel inflexionem.

M. *Apollo* quæ pars orationis?

J. Est nomen Substantivum.

M. Quale Substantivum?

J. Est Substantivum proprium.

M. Et quale igitur proprium?

J. Est proprium nomen Dei sapientiæ.

M. *Apollo* cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis?

M. Et qui scis?

J. Masculina sunt nomina Divorum, Angelorum, virorum, Populorum, Fluviorum, mensium, montium, ventorum, et quæ maribus dantur ut, *Apollo*, Satanas, *Martinus*, *Johannes*, Turca, Thamesis, Aprilis, Caucasus, Zephirus Gallus, Pater, taurus.

M. *Jana* cujus generis?

J. Est fœminini generis.

M. Per quam regulam?

J. Fœminina sunt nomina Dearum, Musarum, mulierum, Illands,

Islands, Countries, Cities, Villages, and names which are given to the female kind only; as, &c. The goddess of wisdom, a muse, *Mary*, an apple tree, *Brittain*, *Greece*, *Lambeth*, *Chester*, a hen, a mother, a cow, a nurse, a queen, and a sister.

M. Of what Gender is Infans an infant?

J. The names and offices of things belonging both to the male and female kind, are of the masculine gender if put for males; but of the feminine if put for females, as, &c. a stranger, a companion, a citizen, an infant, nobody and a parent.

Also the names of birds, wild beasts and fishes, are common to both kinds, as, &c. a sparrow, a want or mole, and an oyster.

M. Rex a king is derived from rego to rule, what gender is rex?

J. It is of the Neuter gender, because, Neuters are words which are taken materialy, that is, to signify the word and not the thing, and whatsoever is put instead of a Substantive.

To this rule belongs the names of things without life, as, &c. a burthen, a spur.

M. What Gender is penna a penn?

J. It is of Feminine gender, because nouns ending in a and e of the first declension are Feminines.

But Masculines are &c. a Comet the Sea, a Planet.

M. Of what Gender is thema a theme?

J. It is of the Neuter gender, because nouns ending in a & e

Arborum, insularum, regionum, urbium, villarum et quæ fœminis dantur ut, Minerva, Urania, *Maria*, malus, *Brittannia*, *Græcia*, *Lomithis*, *Devana*, gallina, mater, vacca, nurus, Regina que soror.

M. Infans cujus generis?

J. Nomina officiumque rerum quæ et maribus et fœminis tribuntur sunt masculini generis si mares indicentur; sed fœmina sunt si fœminæ notentur ut, advena, comes, civis infans et nemo parens.

Nomina etiam, avium, ferarum, et piscium communia sunt ut, passer, talpa et ostrea.

M. Rex derivatum est à rego. Rex cujus generis?

J. Est neutrius generis quia Neutra sunt dictiones quæ sunt materialiter sumptæ, et qualecunque positum vice substantivi.

Huic regulæ appendent nomina innanimata ut, onus, calcar.

M. Penna cujus generis?

J. Est fœminini generis quia in a et e primæ declinationis fœmina sunt.

Masculina vero sunt Cometa, Hadria, planeta.

M. Thema cujus generis?

J. Est neutrius generis quia in et e tertiæ inflexionis neutra sunt.

and

of the third declension are Neuters.

M. Of what gender is gummi gum?

J. It is of the Neuter gender because nouns ending in i, u, y and nouns undeclined called Aptotes are neuters.

M. Sermo a speech what Gender?

J. It is of the Masculine gender, because in o in the Nominative case are Masculines.

But Feminines are &c. flesh, jurisdiction, hail, a rebel, a part and a recompence.

Also nouns in io derived of Verbs are Feminine except pugio a daggar.

Also words of three syllables ending in do and go having dinis and ginis in the Gen. case except &c. a well-drag.

M. Of what gender is lac milk?

J. Lac is of the Neuter gender because, nouns in c, l, m, t, and nouns ending in a in the Nom. case plural are Neut.

But Masculines are &c. a Chub, and the Sun.

Sal salt is both Masculine and Neuter.

M. Of what gender is splen the spleen?

J. It is of the masculine gender because nouns in n are masculines.

But Feminines are &c. the kings fisher an Idea or image, fine linnen.

M. Of what gender then is nomen a name?

J. It is of the neuter gender because nouns in men also &c. glew, the groin and a persons nail are neuters.

M. Gummi cujus generis?

J. Est neutrius generis quia in i, u, y et inflexibilia neutra sunt.

M. Sermo cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis quia in o nominativo masculina sunt.

Faeminina vero sunt caro ditio, grando, perduellio, portioque talio.

In io etiam verbalia sunt Faeminina nisi pugio.

Item trisyllaba in do et go, habentia dinis et ginis in Genitivo, praeter harpago.

M. Lac cujus generis?

J. Est neutrius generis quia in c, l, m, t, et a pluralia nominativo neutra sunt.

Masculina vero sunt mugil et sol.

Et Masculinum et Neutrum est sal.

M. Splen cujus generis?

J. Est Masculini generis quia in n masculina sunt.

Faeminina vero sunt Halcion, icon syndon.

M. Nomen igitur cujus generis?

J. Est neutrius generis quia nomina in men, gluten etiam inguen et unguen neutra sunt.

M. What

M. What gender is calcar a spur?

J. It is of the Neuter gender, because nouns ending in ar, and ur, in the Nom. case are Neuters.

But masculines are &c. bran, a hearth, a young salmon, a turtle and a vulture.

M. Of what gender is carcer a prison?

J. It is of the masculine gender, because nouns ending in er and ir, in the Nom. are masculines.

But feminines are, &c. a little boat, sow bread.

Neuters are &c. a dead carcass, a journey, a buckle, the spring, an udder.

Also the names of fruits and plants as, &c. ginger, a cork tree.

M. Of what gender is rumor a report?

J. It is of the masculine gender because nouns ending in or and ir in the Nom. are masculines.

But Feminine is arbor a tree, and neuters are &c. wheat, the sea, the heart, marble.

M. Tiaras a turbant what gender?

J. It is of the masculine gender, because nouns in as, and es of the first declension are Masculine.

But neuters are &c. a Pasty, faenugreek, Anthonys fire.

M. Civitas a city of what gender?

J. It is of the feminine gender because nouns in as of the third declension are feminines.

But masculines are &c. a male a surety, and those nouns which

M. Calcar quod genus?

J. Est neutrius generis quia in ar et ur nominativo neutra sunt.

Masculina vero sunt, furfur, lar, salar, turturque vultur.

M. Carcer cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis quia in er et ir nominativo masculina sunt.

Faeminina vero sunt linter, tuber.

Neutra sunt Cadaver, iter spinter, ver, uber.

Nomina etiam fructuum & plantarum ut, zingiber suber.

M. Rumor cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis quia in or nominativo masculina sunt.

Faemininum vero arbor, et neutra sunt Ador, aequor, cor, marmor.

M. Tiaras cujus generis?

J. Est masculini generis quia in as & es primae declinationis masculina sunt.

Neutra vero sunt Artocreas Buceras, Erysipelas.

M. Civitas cujus generis?

J. Est faeminini generis quia in as tertae inflexionis faeminina sunt,

Masculina vero sunt mas, maris vas vadis, & quae Genitivum

make

make the Genitive cafe by antis, as, &c. a Diamond, name of a hill.

Alfo as a pound weight with all its parts and compounds ending in s or x as, &c. a third part five ounces.

Neuters are &c. lawful, a villain, and a veffel.

M. Of what gender is fames hunger?

J. It is of the feminine gender becaufe nouns ending in es of the third and fifth Declenfion are Feminine.

Mafculines are &c. a fcymitar a green turf, a yard, tinder.

A whirlpool, a crofs way, a vine branch, a ftockdove, a wall and a foot.

The ham, a maggot, a-thwart path, a ftalk and a barrow pig.

Neuters are &c. brafs, an ill habit of body, witches poifon, buglofs, and cow-parfnip.

Doubtful is dies a day.

M. What gender is corbis a basket?

J. It is of the Feminine gender becaufe nouns in is in the Nominative cafe are Feminines.

Mafculines are &c. a fnake, a water pot, and an axle tree.

A caufey, a fnare, a ftalk, a young branch, a little hill and a cucumer.

A dolphin, a fword, any bundle, bellows, a club, a dormoufe and a ftone.

A month, a chevin, ones birth day, any round thing, to which add a fifh.

A poft, duft or powder, a rebel, a rival, and blood flowing in the veins.

per antis ut, Adama-s-ntis, Atla-s-ntis.

As affis etiam cum fuis partibus & compofitis in s vel x definentibus ut, triens, quincunx.

Neutra funt fas, nefas & vas vafis.

M. Fames cujus generis?

J. Eft fæminini generis quia in es tertiæ & quintæ inflexionis fæminina funt.

Mafculina funt acinaces, cefpes, coles, fomes.

Gurges, limes, palmes, palumbes, paries et pes.

Poples, termes, trames, ftipes & verres.

Neutra funt æs æris cacoethes, hippomanes, nepenthes & panaces.

Dubium eft dies.

M. Corbis cujus generis?

J. Eft fæminini generis quia in is Nominativo fæminina funt.

Mafculina funt anguis aqualis & axis.

Callis, caffis, caulis, colis, collis cucumifque.

Delphis, enfes, fafcis, follis fuftis, glifque, lapis.

Menfis, mugilis, natalis, orbis adde pifcis.

Poftis, pulvis, rebellis, rivalifque fanguis,

A thorn, with a firebrand, and any bar, a worm and a perfons nail.

Alfo all nouns ending in nis, as, fire yet doubtful are &c. a crupper, an end, add a fpotted, ferpent, a ditch and a chain.

M. Of what gender is flos a flower?

J. It is of the mafculine gender becaufe nouns ending in os in the Nom. cafe are mafculines.

But Feminines are &c. a tree, a whetftone, a northen conftellation, of the morning, a diamiter, and a dowry.

Neuters are &c. a pcem, and a mouth, or bone.

M. Of what gender is hortus a garden?

J. It is of the mafculine gender becaufe nouns in us of the fecond and fourth declenfion are mafculines.

But feminines are &c. needle, a bottomlefs place, a paunch, and two nothern conftellations.

A book, filk, coftmary, a fine garment, chryftal and a houfe.

A fig, hyffop, the bare ground, the monthly ides, a hand and a method.

An Ægyptian fhrub, an Ifland a kindred, a porch, and a corn fan.

Doubtful are &c. a green fig, victuals, a pinnace and a cave.

Neuters are &c. the bottom of the fea, and poifon.

Vulgus the meaner fort of people is both Mafculine and Neuter.

M. Of what gender is crus the leg.

J. It is of the Neuter gender, becaufe nouns in us of the third declenfion are Neuters.

Sentis cum torris & veftis vermis & unguis.

Omnia etiam in nis ut, ignis dubia vero funt clunis finis adde cenchris fcrobis, torquis.

M. Flos cujus generis?

J. Eft mafculini generis quia in os nominativo mafculina funt.

Fæminina vero funt arbos, cos, arctos, eos, diametros & dos.

Neutra funt epos & os.

M. Hortus cujus generis?

J. Eft mafculini generis quia in us fecundæ & quartæ inflexionis mafculina funt.

Fæminina vero funt acus abyffus, alvus & arctus.

Biblus, byffus, coftus, carbafus, chriftallufque domus.

Ficus hyffopus humus, idus manus, methodufque.

Papyrus, phafus, tribus porticufque vannus.

Dubia funt groffus, penus phafelufque fpecus.

Neutra funt pelagus & virus.

Et mafculinum & neutrum eft vulgus.

M. Crus cujus generis?

J. Eft neutrius generis quia in us tertiæ inflexionis funt neutra.

Page 46

But masculines are lepus a hare, and nouns which end in pus and make podis in the Genitive case, as, polypus a time server.

Feminines are &c. a crane, herb harefoot, the earth, and nouns which make the Genitive in udis, untis, utis as, &c. a marsh, the name of a city, and vertue.

M. Of what gender is laus praise?

J. It is of the Feminine gender because nouns in aus and ys by y are feminines.

Also feminines are nouns ending in s impure, that is, having a consonant before s.

But masculines are &c. a two grained fork, a spring, steel, a tooth.

A griffen, the dropsy, a mountain, a bird eating bees, a bridge, a cable, and a blind worm.

Nouns in ns are neuters, &c. an accident, young pig, an antecedent.

Doubtful are &c. fatness, a pit, a lineage.

M. Of what gender is pax peace?

J. It is of the Feminine gender because nouns ending in x in the Nominative case are Feminines.

But masculines are &c. a cup, chalk, a bud, an arch, a flock, a musical instrument, a vein swollen with melancholly blood, and a gardiners tool to work.

Also words of two syllables in ax and ex are masculines.

But Feminines are &c. a pair of scissers, a herring, a furnace, black and blew, and a sedge.

Doubtful are &c. a dunghil, a snail, and the creeping vine shoot.

Masculina vero sunt lepus & quae in pus Genitivo etiam podis mittunt ut, polyp-us-odis.

Faeminina sunt grus, lagopus tellus, & quae Genitivo in udis untis, utis ut, palus, Opus, virtus.

M. Laus cujus generis?

J. Est Faeminini generis quia in aus, & ys per y. faeminina sunt.

Faeminina etiam sunt nomina quae in s finiunt praecedente consona ut, pars.

Masculina vero sunt bidens fons, chalibs dens.

Gryps, hydrops, mons, merops, pons, rudens & seps.

In ns neutra sunt ut, accidens nefrens, antecedens.

Dubia sunt adeps, scrobs, stirps.

M. Pax cujus generis?

J. Est Faeminini generis quia in x nominativo faeminina sunt.

Masculina vero sunt calix, calx, calyx, fornix, grex, spadix, varix, & urpix.

Disyllaba etiam in ax & ex sunt masculina.

Faeminina vero sunt forfex, halex, fornax, vibex que carex.

Dubia sunt fimex, limax, & tradux.

M. Of

Page 47

M. Of what gender is avernus?

J. These nouns are of the masculine gender in the singular, and of the neuter in the Plural. &c.

Hell, and the names of four hills.

The names of two hills, a hissing, a promontory, hell, and a hills name.

M. Of what gender is jocus?

J. These are masculines in the singular number, and both masculine and neuter in the plural.

Hell, sport, and a place.

M. Of what gender is supellex?

J. These nouns are faeminines in the singular number, and neuters in the plural, &c.

The sail of a ship, *Jerusalem* the City *Troy*, and houshold goods.

Also the names of Arts and sciences, &c. Grammar, arithmetick.

M. Of what gender is Coelum?

J. These nouns are neuters in the singular number, and masculines in the plural, &c.

A towns name, heaven, a vetch, paradise, a leek and a skirwort.

M. Of what gender is rastrum?

J. These are neuters in the singular number, but both masculine and neuter in the plural, &c.

A head stall, a thrid, a bridle, and a rake.

M. Of what gender is nundinum?

M. Avernus cujus generis?

J. Haec maribus dantur singularia plurima neutris.

Avernus, Dindymus, Gargarus, Ismarusque, Maenalus.

Massicus, Pangaeus, sibilus, Taenerus, Tartarusque, Taygetus.

M. Jocus cujus generis?

J. Mascula sunt primo, mascula & neutra secundo.

Infernus jocusque locus.

M. Supellex cujus generis?

J. Singula faemineis, neutris pluralia gaudent.

Carbasus, *Hierosolyma*, Pergamusque supellex.

Item nomina artium ut, Grammatica, arithmetica.

M. Coelum cujus generis?

J. Mascula pluralia sunt, quae neutralia primo.

Argos, coelum, cicer, Elysium, porrumque siser.

M. Rastrum cujus generis?

J. Neutra sunt primo, sed mascula, neutra secundo.

Capistrum filum, fraenum & rastrum.

M. Nundinum cujus generis?

J. Neu-

J. These nouns are Neuters in the singular, and Feminines in the plural when they have one, &c. a bath, a delight, a banquet a fair.

M. What difference between, &c. a spider?

J. There is no difference in signification, the following nouns have also divers endings in the Nominative, and some of them change the Declension, some the gender some of them differ in both, and some in neither.

Nomina propria.

Adonis, Adoneus. Od-e-a.
Gat-a-es. Meleag-er-rus.
Menand-er-rus. Sim-o-on.
Teuc-er-rus. Thimb-er-rus.

Nomina Appellativa.

Acetabul-a-um	a sawcer
Alabast-er-rum	alabaster
Antidot-us-um	an antidote
Apes, apis	a bee
Aran-ea-eus	a spider
Arbor, arbos	a tree
Attag-en-ena	a snite
Avarit-ia-ies	covetousness
Baculus baculum	a staff
Cepa, cepe	an onion
Concurs-io-us	a concourse
Clypeus clypeum	a buckler
Cinis ciner	ashes
Congrus conger	a conger
Cornu cornum	a hern
Cucumis cucumer	a cucumer
Delp-is-in-inus	a dolphin
Elephas, elephantus	an elephant
Eventus eventum	an event
Gibbus gibber	a bunch on (the back.
Hebdom-as-ada	a week

J. Neutra primo secundæ dabunt quæ fæmina primæ plurali.
Balneum, delicium, epulum nundinum.

M. Aranea araneus quid differentiæ?

J. Significatione nihil est differentiæ, sequentia etiam habent voces diversas nominativo variantia vero jam inflexionem, jam genus, jam utraque jam neutra.

Nominativo redundantia.

Agamemn-o-on. Lig-ur-us.
Amaz-o-on. Evand-er-rus.
Palem-o-on. Pers-es-eus.
Uliss-es-eus. Mens names.

Nominativo redundantia.

Plebs plebis	common people
Pascha paschas	Easter, passover
Postula-tum-tio	postulation
Pubes puber	mature age
Pulvis pulver	dust or powder
Punctus punctum	a point
Scobis scobs	sawdust, pindust
Sinus, sinum	a milking bowl
Sensus sensum	sence conceit
Seneca, senectus	old age
Sinapi sinapis	mustard seed
Stipis stips	wages
Tignus tignum	a rafter
Tape-tum-te-s	tapestry
Tonitrus tonitru	thunder
Vomis vomer	a plowshare
Viscus viscum	birdlime
Lampas lampada	a lamp
Labor labos	labour
Odor odos	scent or favour
Menda mendum	a fault
Materia materies	matter

Ho-

Honor honos — honour
Juventa juventus — youth

The following Adjectives in is and e abound in the Nom. case by having a masculine Gender in er, viz. of the field, swift, famous, swift, wholsome and sharp.

Of a footman, of a horseman, chearful, of the wood, and of the marsh.

Campester is only the masculine gender.

Campestris is both the masculine and feminine gender.

Campestre is only neuter.

There are some Adjectives which are varied both by two words in the Nominative case and also by three endings, such are the compounds of

Arma weapons, &c. the mind, a little stick, a cliff, a bridle, a yoak, a synew, sleep, for Example,
Nom. Inermis M. F. Inerme N.
Nom. Inermus M. Inerma F. Inermum N.

M. Of the Genders which is the most worthy?

J. The masculine gender is more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine is more worthy than the neuter.

But in things not having life or breath, the neuter gender is the most worthy.

Of Adjectives.

M. What is a noun Adjective?

J. A noun Adjective is a word which standeth in need of a Substantive to explain its signification, to which it cleaveth in speech, as, a good, a black, a little, what is good, &c.

Adjectiva sequentia in is et e nominativo superant, per masculinum in er. viz.

Campester, volucer, celeber celer atque saluber acer.
Pedester, equester, alacer, sylvester junge paluster, ut,

Campester Masculininum est tantum.

Campestris & masculinum & femininum.

Campestre neutrum est tantum.

Quædam sunt Adjectiva quæ & variantur per duas terminationes & etiam per tres voces ut sunt composita ex.

Arma, animus, bacillum clivus frænum, jugum, nervus somnus verbi gratia
N. Inermis & inerme vel N. Inermus, inerma inermum.

M. Generum quodnam est dignissimum?

J. Masculinum dignius est fæminino & fæmininum dignius est neutro.

In rebus vero inanimatis neutrum est dignissimum.

De Adjectivis.

M. Quid est nomen Adjectivum?

J. Adjectivum est quod substantivo indiget cui in oratione adhæreat ut, bonus, niger parvus; Quid est bonus, &c.

The anſwer muſt be ſome per-
ſon or thing.

M. How is albus declined ?

J. Adjectives having three end-
ings in the Nom. caſe are declined
by the firſt and ſecond declenſion
of ſubſtantives.

But all other Adjectives are
declined by the third declenſion,
of Subſtantives according to the
following Table.

Praxis.

Exercitium horæ primæ die
Mercurij matutino tempore.

Terminationes Adjectivorum
trium [duarum] terminationum
[unius terminationis] cum para-
digmate.

Numero Singulari.

N. us a um e a um &c. per omnes caſus utriiſque nu-meris.

N.	us a um	ut	parvus a ſmall Maſc. parva a ſmall Fem. parvū a ſmall Neu.
V.	e a um	ut	parve o little male parva o little female parvum o little thing

&c. per omnes caſus utriiſque nu-
meris.

N.	is e	ut	dulcis a ſweet Maſ. or Fem. dulce a ſweet thing or Neut.

&c. per omnes caſus utriiſque nu-
meris.

N.	or us	ut	dulcior a ſweeter M. or Fem. dulcius a more ſweet Neut.

&c. per omnes
caſus utriiſque numeris.

N. x ut ſagax a quick witted M.
Fem. Neut. &c. per omnes caſus
utriiſque numeris.

Paulo poſt diebus.

Subſtantiva cum adjectivis in-
flexa per omnes caſus, & genera,
ſingulis etiam gradibus compara-
tionis, verbi gratià.

M. Albus unde inflectitur ?

J. Adjectiva trium terminatio-
num Nominativo; per primam &
ſecundam inflectionem variantur.

Cætera vero per tertiam in-
flectionem ſecundum Tabulam
ſequentem.

Numero Singulari.

Gend.	N.	V.	Gen.	Dat.	Ac.	Abl.
Adj M 1. F. Ter N	ar,as es,or &c. os, x s,im.	ar	is	i	em & r &c.	e vel i
Adj M F. N	is & e	is & e	is	i	em & e	i
2. M F. Ter. N	or & us	or & us	is	i	em & us	e vel i
Adj M 3. F. Ter. N	r, us a um	r, e a um	i æ i	o æ o	um am um	o â o

Numero Plurali.

Gen. l.	N.	V.	Gen.	Dat.	Ac.	Abl.
Adj M 1. F. Ter. N	es & ia	es & ia	ium	ibus	es et ia	ibus
Adj M F. N	es & ia	es & ia	ium	ibus	es & ia	ibus
2. M F. Ter. N	es & ia	es & ia	ium	ibus	es & ia	ibus
Adj M 3. F. Ter. N	i æ i	i æ a	orum arum orum	is	os as a	is

Exercitium horæ primæ die
Jovis matutino tempore.

Numero ſingulari Nominativo.
vir dignus, a worthy man.
vir dignior, a more worthy man.
vir digniſſimus, the moſt worthy
Man.   *Neutro genere.*

Medicamentum dignum, a
convenient medicine.

Medicamentum dignius, a more
convenient Medicine.

Medicamentum digniſſimum,
moſt convenient medicine, &c. per
omnes caſus gradus genera & nume-
ros.

M. Why hath albus three end-
ings in the Nominative Caſe ?

J. Adjectives ending in r and
us in the Nominative Caſe, have
three endings, the firſt is maſcu-
line, the ſecond is fœminine, and
the laſt is neuter, to which add
&c. both, and two.

M. Why hath omnis all, or
every, two endings in the No-
minative Caſe ?

J. Adjectives ending in is, tres,
three, and comparatives, have
two endings in the nominative
caſe; the firſt is of the maſculine
and fœminine gender, and the
other is neuter.

M. Of what gender is fœlix,
happy ?

J. Adjectives ending in ar, as, es
or, os, x and s impure, in the Nomi-
native caſe, have but one ending,
which is of all genders.

M. Of what gender is quatu-
or, four ?

J. Cardinal Nouns of number,
from four to an hundred, both
incluſive are of all genders.

Genere Fœminino.
Mulier digna, a worthy woman.
Mulier dignior, a more worthy
woman.
Mulier digniſſima, the worthi-
eſt woman.   *Caſu* Genitivo.
Viri digni, of a worthy man.
Viri dignioris, of a worthier
man.
Viri digniſſimi, of the worthi-
eſt man, &c.

M. Albus, alba, album, quare ?

J. Adjectiva in r & us nomi-
nativo tres habent voces, prima
maſculini, ſecunda fœminini, &
ultima neutrius generis eſt, quibus
adde ambo & duo.

M. Omnis & omne, quare ?

J. Adjectiva in is, tres, & com-
parativa Nominativo duas ha-
bent voces, prima maſculini &
fœminini, & altera neutrius, ge-
neris eſt.

M. Fœlix, cujus generis ?

J. Adjectiva in ar, as, es, or, os, x
& s impurum nominativo unam
habent tantum, quæ omnium eſt
generum.

M. Quatuor, cujus generis ?

J. Numeralia Cardinalia à qua-
tuor uſque ad centum incluſive
ſunt generis omnis.

Of Degrees of Comparison.

M. How many degrees of comparison are there?

J. Three, the positive, the comparative, and superative.

M. Of what degree of comparison is dulcior, sweeter, or more sweet?

J. It is of the comparative degree, because comparatives are formed from positives ending in i, by adding thereto or and us, in English it hath more before it, or, er after it.

Superlatives are formed from the same by adding ssimus. In English it hath most before it, or, est after it, as, from duri is made duri-or, and duri-us, duri-ssimus, hard, more hard, or harder, most hard or hardest.

M. Compare it by degrees through every Case in the feminine gender.

J. N. V. the hard, more hard, most hard F.

Gen. of a hard, of a more hard, of a most hard. F.

M. Idoneus fit, in the comparative and superlative degree?

J. More fit, most or very fit.

Because Adjectives which have a Vowel before us final, commonly limit the comparative by magis, and the superlative by either maxime or valde.

M. Ater black in the superlative?

J. Aterrimus, most black, because if the positive endeth in r, the superlative is formed by adding rimus.

M. Facilis in the superlative degree?

De Comparationis gradibus.

M. Quot sunt gradus comparationis?

J. Tres, positivus, comparativus & superlativus.

M. Dulcior, cujus gradus comparationis?

J. Est comparativi gradus, quia comparativa ex positivis in i formantur addendo or, & us.

Superlativa etiam addendo ssimus, ut, ex duri, fit duri-or & duri-us, duri-ssimus.

M. Compara per gradus genere foeminino in omnes casus?

J. N. V. Dura, durior, durissima.

Gen. duræ, durioris, durissimæ, &c.

M. Idoneus, in comparativo & superlativo?

J. Magis idoneus, maxime aut valde idoneus quia, Quæ vocalem ante us habent, fere circumscribunt comparativum & superlativum voce magis & maxime aut valde.

M. Ater in superlativo?

J. Aterrimus, quia si positivus exit in r, superlativus formatur addendo rimus.

M. Facilis, gradu superlativo?

J. Facillimus the easiest, because Adjectives ending in lis, do form the superlative, by changing is into limus.

M. Why not bonus, bonior, bonissimus.

J. The following Adjectives are compared quite beside rule:

Good, better, best.
Bad, worse, worst.
Great, greater, greatest.
Little, less, least.
Much, more, most.

Old, elder, eldest.
Naughty, naughtier, naugtiest.
Ripe, more ripe, most ripe
Reproaching---more---most
Late, more late, most late
Foreign, more strange, most---

Beneath, lower, lowest

Above, higher, highest

Following after, more backward, most backwards
Near, nigher, nighest to us
Within, inward, inmost

Beyond, further off, farthest
Old, elder, eldest.
Long ago, former, first
Near to, nearer, nearest
Rich, richer, very rich.
Also the compounds of volo and facio, are irregular, as,
Friendly or willingly, more, &c.
Stately or noble, more noble ----
Except strange or wonderful.

M. Compare claudus by degrees?

These following Adjectives are not compared at all, &c. tame, lame, gray, bald, degenerate, un-

J. Facillimus, quia adjectiva in lis formant superlativum mutando is in limus.

M. Bonus, melior, optimus, quare?

J. Adjectiva sequentia sunt anomala.

Bonus, melior, optimus,
Malus, pejor, pessimus,
Magnus, major, maximus,
Parvus, minor, minimus,
Multus } plurimus
Multum } plus } plurimum
Vet-us--erior--errimus
Nequ-am--ior--issimus
Matur-us--ior--issimus vel imus
Maledic-us--entior--entissimus
Nuper-us--ior--rimus
Exter } extremus
Exterus } exterior } extimus
Infer--us--ior } infimus } imus
Super--us--ior } supremus } summus
Poster--us--ior } postremus } posthumus
Cit--er--erior--imus
Inter } interior,
Interus } intimus
Ult-er--erior--imus
Sen-ex--ior, maximus natu
Pridem, prior, primus
Prope, proprior, proximus
Dives, ditior, ditissimus
Composita etiam ex volo & facio, ut
Benevol-us--entior--entissimus
Magnific-us---entior--entissimus

Excipe Mirific--us--issimus

M. Claudus compara per gradus?

J. Hæc sequentia non comparantur: Cicur, claudus, canus, calvus, degener, dispar, almus, like,

like, pure, found, beggarly, mind-
ful, ftout, marvellous, fafting,
curled, only, doting, melodious,
ftammering, fierce, fomewhat old,
alledging, telling the truth, tooth-
lefs, favage, indifferent, with what
relates to peculiar Countries, as
1. a *Roman*, a *Grecian*. 2. Poffe-
ffives, as, brothers, mafters.

3. Numerals, as, feven, of three.
4. Diminutives, as, very ten-
der, little.
5. Materials, as, golden, ftony,
woody.
6. Temporals, as, early, of two
years. 7. Alfo, the compounds of
gero & fero, as, wearing horns,
healthful; and thofe adjectives
which end in

1. Bundus, as, ready, to dy, loi-
tering.
2. imus, as, two, three years
old, feafaring.
3. ivus, as, taking advice.
4. plex, as, twofold, threefold.
5. fter, as, of the field, fwift
or fpeedy.

M. Deterior, in the pofitive?
J. It is wanting, but in the fu-
perlative it makes, &c. the worft.
ocior makes ociffimus, moft
fwift, and potior makes potiffi-
mus, the beft.

M. Inclytus in the compara-
tive?

J. The comparative is want-
ing, in the fuperlative it makes
inclytiffimus, moft renowned, in-
victus hath, &c. moft invincible,
novus has, &c. neweft; meritus
has, &c. moft deferved; facer
has, &c. moft holy; invitus hath,
&c. moft unwillingly; fo alfo,
&c. different, falfe, deceived, per-
fwaded, odious, enquired at, fun-
ney, pretty.

falvus, egenus, memor, magna-
nimus, mirus, jejunus, crifpus,
unicus, delirus, canorus, balbus,
ferus, veculus, caufidicus, veridi-
cus, edentulus, filveftris, medio-
cris cum Gentilibus, ut, 1. *Roma-
nus, Græus,* &c. 2. Poffeffiva,
ut, fraternus, herilis.

3. Numeralia, feptimus, ternarius
4. Diminutiva, ut, tenellus,
tantillus.
5. Materialia, ut, aureus, lapi-
deus, ligneus.
6. Temporalia, ut, matutinus,
biennis. 7. Compofita etiam à
gero & fero, ut, corniger, faluti-
fer, & quæ in

1. Bundus, ut, moribundus,
cunctabundus.
2. imus, ut, bimus, trimus,
maritimus.
3. ivus, ut, deliberativus.
4. plex, ut duplex, triplex.
5. fter, ut, campefter, volu-
cer.

M. Deterior in pofitivo?
J. Caret, fed dat deterrimus
in fuperlativo ocior dat ociffimus,
& potior potiffimus.

M. Inclytus in comparativo?

J. Deeft comparativus, fed in-
clytiffimus in fuperlativo, invi-
ctus, invictiffimus, novus, noviffi-
mus, meritus, meritiffimus, facer,
facerrimus, invitus invitiffimus,
fic etiam diverfus, falfus, fidus,
perfuafus, invifus, confultus, apri-
cus, bellus.

M. Juve.

M. Juvenis in the fuperla-
tive?

J. Thefe adjectives want the
fuperlative, &c. a young man, a
young perfon, young, younger,
old, elder, lucky, more propiti-
ous, unhappy, more unfortunate,
near, more near, full or fruitful,
more plentiful, lying on the back,
more idle, infinite, more infinite,
fo filent, common, wholefome, fat
or fertile, bending downwards,
a far off or ftrange, and poffibly
fome others may by chance.

Anterior, former, licentior over
diffolute, want both the pofi-
tive and fuperlative.

M. Juvenis in fuperlativo?

J. Hæc fuperlativo carent, a-
dolofcens, adolofcentior, juvenis,
junior, fenex fenior dexter dex-
terior, finifter finifterior, proxi-
mus proximior, fatur faturior,
fupinus fupinior, infinitus infi-
nitior, fic taciturnus, communis,
falutaris opimus, declivis, lon-
ginquus, & forte alia per-pauca.

Anterior, licentior, & pofitivo
& fuperlativo carent.

Of the Species and Figures of Nouns.

De Speciebus & Nominum Figuris.

M. What is Species or kind?
J. Species is the diftinction of a
primitive, and of a derivative
word.
M. How manifold is the fpe-
cies of a Noun?
J. The fpecies of a Noun is
two-fold; primitive, which is not
taken from any other word, as
pater a father.
And derivative which is deri-
ved, or formed from another, as
paterne, fatherly.
M. What is Figure?
J. Figure is the diftinction of
a fimple and of a compound word.
M. How manifold is Figure?
J. Figure is twofold; that is to
fay, fimple, as juft; and com-
pound, as, &c. unjuft.
Here it is to be obferved,
That a word which is com-
pounded of two nominative ca-
fes, is declined in them both;
for Example, Nom. Voc. a Com-

M. Quid eft Species?
J. Species eft diftinctionis pri-
mitivæ & derivativæ diftinctio.

M. Quotuplex eft fpecies no-
minis?
J. Species nominum eft du-
plex; primitiva quæ aliunde non
trahitur, ut pater.

Et derivativa quæ aliunde for-
matur, ut paterne.

M. Quid eft Figura?
J. Figura eft vocis fimplicis, &
compofita diftinctio.
M. Quotplex eft Figura?
J. Figura eft duplex, viz. fim-
plex, ut juftus; & compofita, ut
injuftus.
Hic recte notandum.
Dictio quæ ex duobus nomina-
tivis eft compofita in utriifque
variatur, verbi gratia.
Nominativo Vocativo, Ref-
publica.

monwealth. Gen. of a Commonwealth. Dat. to a Commonwealth, &c.

Except alteruter which only varies uter, and keeps alter fixt.

Also those Nouns which are compounded of a Nom. case, and an oblique is varied in the Nom. only; as Nom. Voc. The master of the house. Gen. of the master of the, &c.

Of a Pronoun, with things belonging to it.

M. What is a Pronoun?

J. A Pronoun is that part of speech which we use in relating or rehearsing any matter, as instead of naming persons, we say ego *I*, tu *Thou*, ille *He*.

M. How manifold is a Pronoun?

J. Sixfold, Demonstrative, relative, interrogative, possessive, Gentile and reciprocal.

M. How many Pronouns are there?

J. There are nineteen Pronouns, I, thou, of himself, or of themselves, he, the same, he, this, that, mine, thine, his, who Which, ours, yours, our countrey-man, your countrey-man, to which add, what countreyman? add whose? M. F. N.

M. Which of these are Substantives?

J. I, thou, of himself, what thing coming from quis, who All other Pronouns are adjectives.

M. How many are the accidents of a Pronoun?

J. Seven things belong to a Pronoun; Person, Number, Case, Declension, Gender, Species and Figure.

publica. Gen. Rei-publicæ. Dat. Rei-publicæ, &c.

Excipe alteruter, quod variatur ultimo tantum.

Et quæ componuntur ex casu recto & obliquo in nominativo tantum variantur, ut, Nominativo Vocativo, Pater familias.

Gen. Patris familias. Dativo Patri, &c.

De Pronomine, cum ejus accidentibus, &c.

M. Quid est Pronomen?

J. Pronomen est pars orationis quâ in demonstranda aut repetenda re aliquâ utimur.

M. Quotuplex est Pronomen?

J. Sextuplex, Demonstrativum, Relativum, Interrogativum, Possessivum, Gentile & Reciprocum.

M. Quot sunt Pronomina?

J. Novendecim sunt Pronomina, ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, is, Hic, iste, meus, tuus, suus, quis,

Qui, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, cum, cujas, quibus, adde cujus, cuja, cujum.

M. Ex his, quæ sunt substantiva?

J. Ego, tu, sui, quid ex quis; cætera sunt adjectiva.

M. Quot accidentia Pronominis?

J. Septem accidunt Pronomini, Personæ, Numerus, Casus, inflexio Genus, Species & Figura.

M. Quot

M. How many Persons are there?

J. Three, I, we, are of the first person, tu, vos and every vocative case are of the second person.

All the rest are of the third person.

The same, he himself, he and who, may be joined to, or agree with any person.

M. Of the persons, which is the most worthy?

J. The first person is more worthy than the second, and the second is more worthy than the third.

M. How many Numbers?

J. Numbers are two, and cases are six, just as in Nouns.

M. How many Declensions?

J. There are four Declensions of Pronuns.

M. Of what Declension is Ego I?

J. I, Thou, of himself, are of the first Declension, and they make the Genitive end in i.

Which together with their compounds are thus declined.

M. Quot sunt personæ?

J. Tres, primæ, ego, nos. Secundæ, tu, vos, & omne vocativum.

Cætera sunt tertiæ personæ.

Idem, ipse, is & qui omnibus personis jungi possunt.

M. Personarum quænam est dignissima?

J. Prima persona dignior est secundâ: & secunda dignior est tertiâ.

M. Quot sunt numeri?

J. Numeri sunt duo, & casus sunt sex, sicut in nominibus.

M. Quot sunt inflexiones?

J. Declinationes Pronominis sunt quatuor.

M. Ego, cujus inflexionis?

J. Ego, tu, sui, sunt primæ inflexionis, & habent i Genitivo.

Quæ cum suis compositis hoc modo variantur.

I	Nom.	We		Ego	N	*Nos*
wanting	Voc.	wanting		caret	V	*caret*
of me	Gen.	of us		mei	G	*nostrum vel nostri*
to me	Dat.	to us		mihi	D	*nobis*
me	Accu.	us		me	Ac	*nos*
with me	Ablat.	with us		me	Abl	*nobis*
Thou	Nom.	Ye		tu	N	*vos*
o thou	Voc.	o ye		tu	V	*vos*
of thee	Gen.	of you		tui	G	*vestrum vel vestri*
to thee	Dat.	to you		tibi	D	*vobis*
thee	Accu.	you		te	Ac	*vos*
from thee	Ablat.	by you		te	Abl	*vobis*

Both in the singular and plural number.	N. V. Gen. Dat. Accu. Ablat	are wanting of himself to himself himself from himself or themselves	Numero singulari & plurali.	NV Ge. Da. Ac. Abl	caret sui sibi se se

M. Of what Declension is hic, he, or this.

J. Of the Second Declension are this, he, who, he, the same, and they make the Genitive case singular in us.

M. Decline hic, is, and qui ?

M. Hic cujus inflexionis ?

J. Secundæ inflexionis sunt, hic, is, qui, ille, ipse, iste, & dant us Genitivo.

M. Hic, is, qui inflecte.

This M F N is wanting of this M F N to this MFN this M F N From this,&c	N. V G. D. Ac Ab	these M F N is wanting of these to these these M F N for these	hic, hæc, hoc caret hujus huic hunc, hanc, hoc hoc, hâc, hoc	N. V G. D. Ac Ab	hi, hæ, hæc caret horum harum horum his hos, has, hæc his
that M F N wanting of that MFN to that MFN that M F N in that MFN	N. V G. D. Ac Ab	those is wanting of those to those those M F N by those, &c	is, ea, id caret ejus ei eum, eam, id eo, eâ, eo	N. V G. D. Ac Ab	ij, eæ, ea caret eorum, earum, eorum eis, vel iis eos, eas, ea eis, vel iis
which wanting of which to which which M F N thrô wch.&c.	N. V G. D. Ac Ab	which M F N is wanting of which to which which M F N with which	Qui, quæ, quod caret cujus cui quem, quam, qd quo, quâ, quo	N. V G. D. Ac Ab	Qui, quæ, quæ caret quorum quarum quorum quibus vel queis quos, quas, quæ, quibus vel queis

M. Ille in the neuter Gender of the nominative ?

Illud, because ille, iste, and the noun alius another, make the neuter Gender in the nominative case singular in ud.

M. What difference between ille, iste, hic, having the same Signification ?

M. Ille in neutro nominativo ?

J. Illud. quia ille, iste, & nomen alius faciunt neutrum nominativo singulari in ud.

M. Quid differentiæ inter ille, iste, hic ?

                         J. Ille

J. Ille signifies a Person or Thing excellent, iste abject or despised, and hic near at hand.

M. Of what Declension is meus ?

J. Of the third declension are &c. mine, thine, his, our, your, whose, and the Genitive case endeth in i, æ, i, because they are varied by three words.

M. Of what Declension is nostras ?

J. Of the fourth declension are, &c. our Country-man, your Country-man, what Country-man, and the Genitive ends in âtis, being declined after the third declension of nouns.

M. Of what Gender is Ego I ?

J. I, thou, of himself, or of themselves are referred to all the three Genders.

M. Why is qui Masc. quæ fæm. quod Neuter ?

J. Pronoun adjectives are declined by three Genders, as nouns adjectives are.

M. Amongst the kinds of Pronouns, which are Primitives ?

J. I, thou, of himself, he, the same, he, this, that, are Primitives ; all the rest are derivatives, because they spring from the primitives.

M. How manifold is the Figure of a Pronoun ?

J. It is two-fold, simple, as, Ego I.

Compound as, &c. I my self, with me, pte, te, me, met, are syllables added to the end of a word, thereby compounded for the better expressing the thing signified.

J. Ille excellentiam, iste contemptum, & hic proximatum significant.

M. Meus, cujus inflexionis ?

J. Tertiæ inflexionis sunt meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, cujus & Genitivus exit in i, æ i, quia per tres voces variantur.

M. Nostras cujus Declinationis ?

J. Quartæ inflexionis sunt nostras, vestras, cujas & Genitivus exit in âtis, quia per tertiam inflexionem variantur nominum.

M. Ego, cujus generis ?

J. Ego, tu, sui, ad tria genera referuntur.

M. Qui, quæ, quod, quare ?

J. Pronomina adjectiva per tria genera variantur, ut in adjectivis nominum.

M. In speciebus pronominum quæ sunt primitivæ.

J. Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, is, hic, iste sunt primitivæ, cætera sunt derivativa quia ex his derivantur.

M. Figura pronominis quotuplex ?

J. Duplex est, simplex, ut, ego, me.

Composita ut, egomet, mecum, pte, te, met; Syllabæ sunt adjectæ verbis compositis Emphasis causâ.

Concerning Verbs, with what belongs to them.

M. What is a Verb?

J. A Verb is a word declinable by Moods and Tenses, whereby the doing, the suffering, or being of a substantive is signified.

M. How manifold is a Verb?

J. A Verb is two-fold, personal and impersonal.

M. What is a Verb personal?

J. A Verb personal is a word which is distinguished by three persons in both Numbers.

M. What is a Verb impersonal?

J. A Verb impersonal is a word which wants the first and second person in both numbers.

But a verb impersonal of the passive voice may indifferently be taken for every person of either number; as, where do I begin, where do you begin, where doth he begin, where do we begin, where do ye begin, where do they begin?

A verb impersonal wants the Supines and the Gerunds.

M. How many are the accidents of a verb?

J. Eight things belong to a verb, Kind, Mood, Tense, Conjugation, Number, Person, Species and Figure.

Of the kind of Verbs.

M. How many sorts of verbs are there?

J. There are four kinds of verbs, Active, Passive, Neuter and Deponent.

M. What is a verb active?

De Verbis, cum Accidentibus.

M. Quid est Verbum?

J. Verbum est vox variabilis per modos & tempora, quo Actionem, Passionem vel Essentiam substantivi significatur.

M. Quotuplex est verbum?

J. Duplex, Personale & Impersonale.

M. Quid est verbum personale?

J. Verbum personale est quod in utroque numero tribus personis distinguitur.

M. Quid est verbum impersonale?

J. Verbum Impersonale est quod caret primâ & secundâ personâ utriisque numeris.

Verbum impersonale vero vocis passivæ pro singulis personis utriusque numeri indifferenter accipi potest, ut, ubi incipitur à me, à te, ab illo, à nobis, à vobis, ab illis?

Verbum etiam impersonale supinis & Gerundij vocibus caret.

M. Quot sunt accidentia verbi?

J. Octo accidunt verbo, Genus, Modus, Tempus, Conjugatio, Numerus, Persona, Species & Figura.

De genere Verborum.

M. Quot sunt genera verborum?

J. Genera verborum sunt quatuor, Activum, Passivum, Neutrum & Deponens.

M. Quid est verbum activum?

J. A verb active is a word which signifies to do, and in the first person of the Indicative Mood present tense singular ends in o; and it can form a passive in or, as; audio I hear, is active; audior I am heard is passive.

M. How do you know a verb passive?

J. A verb passive is a word which signifies to suffer, and ends in or, but may become an active by taking away the r, as, &c. I am heard, I do hear.

M. How is a verb neuter known?

J. A verb neuter is a word which ends in o or in m, as, &c. I drink, I am. But can neither become wholly active, nor wholly passive both in signification and termination.

But verbs neuter very often usurp the third person of the passive voice, as, vinum bibitur, wine is drank.

M. How is a Verb Deponent known?

J. A Verb Deponent is a word which ends in or, but hath usually an active signification, as, loquor, I speak; but r is never taken away as in passives.

A Deponent also hath Gerunds and supines like an active, which a passive hath not.

Of the Moods.

M. How many Moods are there?

J. There are four Moods, the Indicative, the Imperative, the Conjunctive, and the Infinitive.

M. How is the Indicative known?

J. Activum est quod agere significat, & in o finitum passivum in or, etiam formare potest, ut, audio, audior.

M. Unde dignoscitur passivum?

J. Passivum est quod pati significat, & in or finitum activi formam r dempto resumere potest, ut, audior, audio.

M. Unde dignoscitur Neutrum?

J. Neutrum est quod in o vel in m finitum, ut bibo, sum; sed nec activam, nec passivam formam integrè induere potest.

Tertiam autem personam passivæ vocis sæpissime usurpant, ut vinum bibitur.

M. Quomodo dignoscitur Deponens?

J. Deponens est quod in or finitum, significationem vero activam fere usurpat, ut, loquor, sed r nunquam est absumptum.

Deponens etiam habet Gerundia & supina passiva vero non.

De Modis.

M. Quot sunt Modi?

J. Modi sunt quatuor, Indicativus, Conjunctivus, Imperativus, & Infinitivus.

M. Unde dignoscitur Indicativus?

J.

J. Verbs of mentioning, affirming, denying and demanding, we use to put in the Indicative Mood.

M. How is the Conjunctive known?

J. Verbs of wishing and desiring we use in the Conjunctive Mood, wherein also we signifie a thing able or willing, or which ought to be done.

M. Why do you say, I askt you, that you would come to me. (not)?

J. When two verbs come together with (to) between them, the latter is put into the Conjunctive Mood, with ut, that, provided one of them be, &c. to beware, to advise, to desire, to do, to exhort, to warn, to pray, to ask, or their compounds, as,

I desire you to have a care.

I require you to do this thing.

I require you to be more diligent for the time to come.

I have advised thy Brethren to be more attentive in Church.

I will not have you do this, &c.

M. Why do you say, I know not whether he be white or black (not)?

J. Because the Conjunctions, &c. and, either, and, or, not, neither, unless, how, besides, and, also, or whether, or, or, couple like cases and moods, as for Example:

He is not so old as you are.

My Father and Mother are angry.

M. Why do you say, &c. I question not but you understand this matter.

J. The Conjunctions ut, that, quo, to the end that, quin but, require a Conjunctive Mood;

J. Verba narrandi, affirmandi, negandi & interrogandi utimur indicativo.

M. Unde Conjunctivus dignoscitur?

J. Verba optandi & cupiendi utimur conjunctivo: quo posse etiam & velle, aut debere fieri aliquid significamus.

M. Quare dicis rogavi te ut ad me venires (non) ad me venire?

J. Quando duo verbo junguntur cum (ad) intercedente, posterius in Conjunctivum ponitur, cum ut, modo de illis unum sit caveo, consulo, cupio, facio, hortor, moneo, oro, rogo vel composita.

Exempli gratiâ.

Volo ut caveatis

Rogo ut hoc faciatis

Rogo ut vos sitis posthac diligentiores.

Hortatus sum tuos fratres ut essent attentiores in Templo.

Nolo ut hoc agas, &c.

M. Quare dicis albus an ater sit nescio (non) atro?

J. Quia similes casus & modos postulant, ac, an, atque, aut, nec, neque, nisi, quam, praeterquam, que, quoque, seu, sive, ve, vel.

Verbi Gratiâ.

Est minor natu quam tu.

Pater & Mater sunt irrati.

M. Quare dicis non dubito quin hoc intelligas?

J. Conjunctiones ut, quo, quin Conjunctivum adsciscunt; etsi praesens vel futurum praecedit

and if a present or future tense went before, the present tense of the Conjunctive follows; but if the preter tense go before the imperfect tense of the conjunctive follows.

M. Why do you say, &c. what are you doing? see what you do.

J. Because Interrogatives when they demand, require to be put into the Indicative Mood, but when they do not ask a question, the conjunctive.

M. Why do you say, &c. I am glad because thou art come.. I have written that thou mightest come? The difference between quod and ut is required, they both signifying (that)?

J. Quod signifies the same as quia, because, and is used about things past.

But ut, signifies the same with eo fine, for the end or purpose, and we use it about things to come.

After verbs of being afraid of, ut signifies negatively; but ne after those verbs signifies affirmatively.

I fear I shall not be able to accomplish this matter.

I was afraid lest the Master should come.

M. How is the Imperative Mood known?

J. Verbs of commanding, advising, praying, forbidding and permitting, are placed in the Imperative Mood.

It hath a double present tense, the first signifies more immediately than the latter, as, &c. do thou read; all other tenses are wanting; and so is the first person singular.

dit, praesens conjunctivi sequitur; si vero praeteritum praecesserit imperfectum conjunctivi sequitur.

M. Quare dicis, quid agis? vide quid agas.

J. Interrogativa quando interrogant Indicativum adsciscunt; sed quando non interrogant conjunctivum.

M. Quare dicis gaudeo quod venires. Scripsi ut veniris?

J. Quod idem valet ac quia, & de praeteritis usurpatur, ut, vero valet eo fine, Et in rebus futuris utimur.

Ut negative significat post verba timendi.

Ne autem affirmative, ut, metuo ut possim hoc efficere.

Timebam ne Praeceptor veniret.

M. Unde dignoscitur Imperativus?

J. Verba imperandi, hortandi, orandi, prohibendi, & permittendi modo Imperativo sunt collocata.

Praesens habet duplex, ut, lege, legito; caetera desunt tempora prima etiam persona singulari.

M.

M. How is the Infinitive Mood known?

The latter of two Verbs, having no conjunction between, is put in the Infinitive mood, as, &c. He will not know how to speak, who knows not how to hold his peace.

M. Why do you say, &c. Thou knowest that I have always been thy friend (not)?

J. The conjunction (that) coming between two Verbs, (that) is cast away; and with an accusative case set before (which might be resolved into a nominative, to come before that verb) the later is put into the Infinitive Mood, as,

I hear that thou art a diligent Boy.

I hope that I shall be loved by you.

To this infinitive mood belongs three Gerunds ending in di, do, dum. Also two Supines, ending in um and u; and Participles, whereof we will treat in their proper place.

Gerunds, Supines and Participles, require or govern the same case those verbs do from whence they come. Gerunds want the plural.

M. Why do you say, it is time to breakfast (not)?

J. The latter verb signifying the present tense of the infinitive mood active, is made by the Gerund in di, provided between those verbs be put, &c. love, cause, custom, counsel, desire, end.

Favour, carried, expert, pattern, manner, opportunity, idleness.

Occasion, knowing, power, rea-

M. Infinitivus unde dignoscitur?

J. Posterius verbum absque conjunctione infinitivo ponitur, ut; loqui ignorabit, qui tacere nescit.

M. Quare dicis. scis me semper fuisse tuum amicum (non) scis quod ego semper fui?

J. Conjunctio (quod) inter duo verba contingens (quod) rejicitur: & cum accusativo antecedente (quod in nominativum resolveretur) alterum ponitur infinitivum, ut,

Audio te esse puerum diligentem.

Spero me amatum iri a vobis.

Huic modo infinitivo appendent tria Gerundia in di do dum, finita. Duo etiam Supina in um & u. Item Participia de quibus suo loco.

Gerundia, Supina & Participia, regunt casus suorum verborum. Gerundia carent plurali.

M. Quare dicis tempus est jentandi (non) jentare?

J. Posterius verbum infiniti activi significantia præsens fit per Gerundium in di modo interposita sint amor, causa, consuetudo, consilium, cupidus, eventum.

Gratia, gestus, gnarus, norma, modus, opportunitas, otium.

Occasio, peritus, potestas, ratio

son, hope, fulness, study.

Time, force or strength, and will, as,

Thou shalt have an opportunity to see thy Parents (not)

He is skilful to write (not)

He is sure to go because he hath a desire to see.

M. Why do you say, by writing you will learn to write (not)? or you will learn to write by writing?

J. Because words signifying the ablative case of the participle of the present tense, (provided they follow verbs,) are made by Gerunds in do, and very often with prepositions, as,

Slothful Boys are soon discouraged from Learning.

M. Why do you say, I came to ransom or redeem thee (not)?

J. Gerunds in dum follows verbs, but are governed or depend on Prepositions governing the accusative case; and they signifie either the infinitive mood active, or the participle of the present tense, as,

Be ye merry at Supper-time.

A most large place to plead in.

But if necessity be signified, the Gerunds in dum are put absolute, (that is, they are governed of nothing) the verb est being added, which is sometimes expressed, and sometimes understood, as, I must go hence (not).

We must pray that there may be a sound mind in a sound body.

M. How came you indifferently to say, I am going to Supper? &c.

J. Because the first supine; also participles of the future tense

tio, spes, satietas, Studium.

Tempus, visque, voluntas, ut,

Erit tibi opportunitas videndi parentes (non) videre.

Est peritus scribendi (non) scribere.

Est certus eundi, quia cupidus visendi.

M. Quare dicis scribendo disces scribere (non) per scribentem?

J. Quia dictiones participii præsentis significantes ablativum, (modo sequuntur verba,) fiunt per Gerundia in do, & sæpissime cum præpositionibus, ut;

Ignavi à discendo cito deterrentur.

M. Quare dicis veni propter te redimendum (non) redimere?

J. Gerundia in dum sequuntur verba, sed pendent ex præpositionibus accusativum regentibus, & significant vel Infinitivum activi vel participium præsentis, ut,

Inter cænandum hilares este?

Locus amplissimus ad agendum est.

Si necessitas vero significatur Gerundia in dum absolute ponuntur addito verbo est expresso vel intellecto, ut; abeundum est mihi (non) oportet me hinc abire.

Orandum est ut sit mens sana in corpore sano.

M. Quare indifferenter dicis; eo cænatum, eo cænaturus, vel eo ad cænandum?

J. Quia prius supinum; participia etiam futuri in rus &

in rus, and Gerunds, fignifie actively, and follow Verbs; and participles fignifying motion to a perfon, or place, or thing, as,

I am coming to teach my Schollars.

Yefterday I went to fee your Study.

M, Why do you fay, he is worthy to be approved (not)?

J. The latter Supine fignifies paffively, and follows adjectives and verbs alfo which fignifie motion from a place, perfon or thing. as,

It is hard to be faid---done---read----written----moved.

He arifeth from Bed, or he lifteth up himfelf in Bed.

He returneth from Hunting.

Of the Tenfes, and feveral other Things.

M. How many Tenfes of Verbs are there ?

J. There are five tenfes or times, the prefent, the imperfect paft, perfect paft, more than perfect paft, and the time to come.

M. How are the Tenfes known ?

J. In the Englifh Tongue, the tenfes are known by their figns; but in Latine by the terminations in the Moods.

M. Give the Englifh figns of tenfes.

The Prefent Tenfe.
Active, do, doft, doth.
Paffive, am, art, is, are.
Imperfect Tenfe.
Active, did, didft
Paffive, was, waft, were

Gerundia in dum, active fignificant, & fuccedunt verba vel participia motum ad locum fignificantia, ut,

Venio doctum difcipulos meos.

Héri ibam ad te vifurus mufæum tuum.

M. Quare dicis dignus eft fpectatu,(non) fpectari ?

J. Pofterius Supinum paffive fignificat, & fequitur adjectiva, & etiam verba motum de loco fignificantia, ut,

Eft difficile dictu---factu---lectu fcriptu---motu---
Surgit Cubitu.

Redit venatu.

De Temporibus, & multis aliis.

M. Quot funt tempora verborum ?

J. Quinque funt tempora, præfens, imperfectum, perfectum, plufquam perfectum & futurum.

M. Unde dignofcuntur tempora ?

J. Anglice dignofcuntur fignis; Latine vero modis.

M. Redde figna Anglicana ?

J. The Indicative mood has no fign at all.

The Conjunctive mood in the prefent and future tenfe hath *may* or *can* active.

Perfect

Perfect Tenfe.
Active, have, haft, hath
Paffive, have been, &c.

Pluperfect Tenfe.
Active, haft, hadft
Paffive, had been, &c.

Future Tenfe.
Active, fhall---t will---t
Paffive, fhal---t be, wil---t be

The prefent tenfe is that time wherein an action now to be done, or a doing, is fignified, as, I hear, I am heard, or, I am hearing.

The preterimperfect tenfe is that time wherein an action is not as yet perfected, or ended, as, I did write, I was a writing.

The preterperfect tenfe is that time wherein an action paft and perfected is fignified, as, I have written, I have been a writing.

This tenfe with thofe fpringing from it, is double in verbs ending in or, the firft wherein a thing juft paft is expreffed, as, I have been a writing, juft now.

And the later, wherein is declared a thing done or paft a good while ago, as, I have been taught.

If a paffive Englifh is to be rendred by a Latine Neuter, then the prefent tenfe Englifh is made by the perfect tenfe Latine, and the imperfect tenfe Englifh by the pluperfect tenfe Latine, as,

When we were fet.

Being we are fate upon the foft Grafs.

The preterpluperfect tenfe is

In the other tenfes it hath *might, would, could, fhould* or *ought,* active.

The Imperative hath *let* in 3 Perfons.

The Infinitive Mood hath *to.*

The *active* figns of the moods become *paffive* by poft-poning be, been.

Præfens eft quo nunc geri actio fignificatur, ut, audio, audior.

Imperfectum eft quo actio non dum perfecta fignificatur, ut, fcribebam, fcribebar.

Perfectum eft quo præterita & abfoluta fignificatur actio, ut, fcripfi, fcripfus fum.

Verbis in or, hoc tempus cum fuo prole eft duplex; alterum quo proxime præteritum exprimitur ut, fcripfus fum.

Et alterum quo ulterius præteritum indicatur, ut, doctus fui,

Si Paffivum Anglicanum per Neutrum Latinum tranflaturum tunc præfens Anglice fit per perfectum Latine; & Imperfectum Anglice, per plufquam perfectum Latine, ut,

Cum confediffimus (non) confedebamus.

Quondoquidem in molli confedimus herba.

Plufquam-perfectum eft quo

that time wherein an action past long ago, is signified, as, I had written, I had been a writing.

The future tense is that time wherein a matter to be atchieved in time to come is signified, as, I will write, I will be a writing.

Of Conjugations.

M. How many Conjugations?
J. Conjugations are four.

The first conjugation ends in o, and hath a consonant standing before it, and hath ā every where long before re and ris.

The second Conjugation also ends in o with ē standing before it, which is also long before re and ris.

M. Are all verbs that end in eo, of the second conjugation?

J. No, for of the first conjugation are, to bless, to put shoes on, to create, to take out the kernel, to entangle, to pass, to loath, to hauk up, with their compounds.

Eo I go, and Queo I am able, with their compounds, are of the fourth conjugation.

The third conjugation also ends in o, with a consonant before it, but hath ě always short before re and ris.

The fourth conjugation ends in o with ī before it, which is every where long before re and ris.

M. Are all verbs that end in io of the fourth conjugation?

J. No, for of the first conjugation are, to enlarge, to kiss wantonly. to make wretched, to divide into hundreds, to torment, to divide into bands, to make

---

jamdiu praeterita significatur, ut, scripseram, scripsus eram.

Futurum est quo res in futuro gerenda significatur, ut, scribam, scribar.

De Conjugationibus.

M. Quot sunt Conjugationes?
J. Conjugationes sunt quatuor.

Prima exit in o praecedente consona, & habet ā ubique longum ante re & ris.

Secunda etiam exit in o cum ē praecedente, quod est ubique longum ante re & ris.

M. Sunt ne omnia verba in eo secundae Conjugationis?

J. Non, nam primae conjugationis sunt, beo, calceo, creo, enucleo, laqueo, meo, nauseo, screo, suis compositis.

Eo & queo cum compositis sunt quartae conjugationis.

Tertia exit in o impuro, ubiq; vero habet ě breve ante re & ris.

Quarta exit in o cum i praecedente quod ubique est longum, ante re & ris.

M. Suntne omnia verba in io, quartae conjugationis?

J. Non, Nam primae conjugationis sunt amplio, basio, calimidio, centurio, crucio, decurio

---

lean, to make bundles, to make mad, to congeal, to gape, to cut in peices, to report, to honour, to shine, to do like for like, to supply number, to make salt, to wound, to accompany, to dream, to spoil, to turn and breath, to deck, to infect.

Of the Third Conjugation are, &c. to take, to desire, to make, to dig, to flee, to cast, to entice, to bring forth, to shake, to snatch, to behold, with their compounds.

M. Pray shew me a form whereby most verbs in o may be very easily conjugated?

J. I will oblige you with all my heart.

Praxis.

Exercitium horae primae die Veneris, matutino tempore,

Terminationes vocis activae una cum passiva per quatuor conjugationes in omnibus modis, temporibus, numeris & personis.

Et primo conjugatio prima.

Modi Indicativi. Tempus praesens.

o, as, at, amus, atis, ant.

Verbi gratia.

Laudo, laudas, laudat, laudamus, laudatis, laudant. Anglice,

I, thou, he, we, ye, they do praise.

or, aris vel are, atur, amur, amini, antur. Exempli gratia.

Laudor, laudaris vel laudare, laudatur, laudamur, laudamini, laudantur.

I, thou, he, we, ye, they are praised.

Tempus imperfectum.

abam, abas, abat, abamus, abatis, abant; ut, laudabam, laudabas, laudabat, laudabamus, laudabatis, laudabant. I, thou, he, we, ye, they did praise.

---

rio, emacio, fastio, furio, glacio, hio, lanio, nuncio, pio, radio, retalio, succenturio, salio, saucio, socio, somnio, spolio, strio, vario, vitio.

Tertiae Conjugationis sunt capio, cupio, facio, fodio, fugio, jacio, lacio, pario, quatio, rapio, sapio, specio, cum compositis.

M. Praebe mihi quaeso Schema quo omnia fere verba in o facillime sint conjugata.

J. Tibi obsequar ex animo.

Modus Indicativus activae vocis.
Tempus Praesens.

Pers.	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Pass.	r.	ris, re.	tur.	mur.	mini.	tur
1. Voc	o	as	at	amus	atis	ant
2. Ten	eo	es	et	emus	etis	ent
3. Dic	o	is	it	imus	itis	unt
4. Audi	o	is	it	imus	itis	iunt

Tempus Imperfectum.

1. aba	m	s	t	mus	tis	nt
2. eba	m	s	t	mus	tis	nt
3. eba	m	s	t	mus	tis	nt
4. ieba	m	s	t	mus	tis	nt

In omnibus Conjug.
Tempus Perfectum.

i--isti--it--imus--istis ⎰ erunt
⎱ ere

Plusquam-perfectum.

era--m--s--t ——— mus--tis--nt

Observe.

Tempus Futurum.

1. ab	o	is	it	imus	itis	unt
2. eb	o	is	it	imus	itis	unt
3. am		es	et	emus	etis	ent
4. iam		ies	iet	iemus	ietis	ient

Modus

'Abar, abaris vel abare, abatur, abamur, abamini, abantur, ut,

Laudabar, laudabaris, vel laudabare, laudabatur, laudabamur, laudabamini, laudabantur.

I, thou, he, we, ye, they were praised.

Tempus perfectum.

i, isti, it, imus, istis, erunt vel ère; ut, ego laudavi, tu laudavisti, ille laudavit. nos laudavimus, vos laudavistis, illi laudaverunt vel laudavere. I, thou, he, we, ye, they have praised.

Tus sum vel fui; tus es vel fuisti; tus est vel fuit; ti sumus vel fuimus; ti estis vel fuistis; ti sunt fuerunt vel fuêre: ut,

Laudatus sum vel fui; laudatus es vel fuisti; laudatus est vel fuit; laudati sumus vel fuimus; laudati estis vel fuistis; laudati sunt fuerunt vel fuêre.

I, thou, he, we, ye, they have been praised, &c. *Secundum inscriptionem.*

Praxis.

Exercitium horæ primæ die Saturni matutino tempore.

Cognata tempora activæ & passivæ vocis per quatuor conjugationes. Et primo primæ personæ, primæ conjugationis.

Præsens cum prole.

Laudo, laudabam, laudabo; laudem, laudarem, laudare; laudandi, laudando, laudandum, laudans. I praise, I did praise, I shall, &c.

Laudor, laudabar, laudabor, lauder, laudarer, laudari, laudandus. I am praised, I was, &c.

Perfectum cum prole.

Modus Conjunctivus.
Tempus Præsens.

	Ego	tu	ille	nos	vos	illi
1.	am	es	et	emus	etis	ent
2. e	am	as	at	amus	atis	ant
3.	am	as	at	amus	atis	ant
4. i	am	as	at	amus	atis	ant

Tempus Imperfectum.

1.	are	m	s	t	mus	tis	nt
2.	ere	m	s	t	mus	tis	nt
3.	ere	m	s	t	mus	tis	nt
4.	ire	m	s	t	mus	tis	nt

In omnibus Conjug.
Tempus Perfectum.

eri m s t mus tis nt

Plusquam Perfectum.

isse m s t mus tis nt

Tempus Futurum.

er o is it imus itis int

Observe.

Modus Imperativus.

Habet Præsens duplex.

	Tu	ille		Nos	Vos	Ill.
1.	a	et }	emus {		ate	ent
	ato	ato }			atote	anto
2.	e	eat }	eamus {		ete	eant
	eto	eto }			etote	ento
3.	e	at }	amus {		ite	ant
	ito	ito }			itote	unto
4.	i	iat }	iamus {		ite	iant
	ito	ito }			itote	iunto

Modus Infinitivus. Tempus
Præsens & Imperfectum.
1. are. 2. ere. 3. ere. 4. ire.
Perfectum & Plusquam-perfect.
Omnium isse, ut, dixisse.
Tempus Futurum.
Singulariter urum, uram, urum.
Pluraliter uros, uras, ura esse.
laudavi,

Laudavi, laudaveram, laudaverim, laudavissem, laudavero, laudavisse, laudatum, laudatu, laudatus, laudaturus.

I have praised, I had praised, I should have praised, &c.

Laudatus sum vel fui, laudatus eram vel fueram, laudatus sim vel fuerim, laudatus essem vel fuissem, laudatus ero vel fuero, laudatum esse vel fuisse, laudatum iri vel laudandum esse, I have been, &c.

M. But whence are verbs in or formed?

J. Verbs ending in or in the present tense, and in all the tenses derived from it, are formed from the active voice:

1. by adding r to o, wheresoever it is found.
2. By changing m into r.
3. By changing s into ris and re.
4. By changing t into tur.
5. By changing mus into mur.
6. By changing tis into mini.
7. By changing te into mini.
8. By changing tote into minor.
9. By changing e into i in the infinitive mood. But in the third conjugation ere is changed into i, as, to read, to be read.
10. The Future Tense of the infinitive mood is made of the participle of the præter tense, with iri, or of the future in dus, with esse, as, to be loved hereafter.
11. In the second person of the present tense of the third conjugation.

Also in the second person of the future tense in the Indicative mood of the first and second con-

Gerundia.

1.	andi	ando	andum
2.	endi	endo	endum
3.	endi	endo	endum
4.	iendi	iendo	iendum.

Supina.

Prius -um. Posterius u.

Participia.

Præsentis 1. ans. 2. ens. 3. ens. 4. iens. Omnium futuri urus.

M. Verba vero in or unde formantur?

J. Verba in or in tempore præsenti cum prole de verbis in o formantur.

1. Addendo r ad o ubique repertur.
2. Mutando m in r.
3. Mutando s in ris & re.
4. Mutando t in tur.
5. Mutando mus in mur.
6. Mutando tis in mini.
7. Mutando te in mini.
8. Mutando tote in minor.
9. Mutando e in i infinitivo tertia vero conjugatione ere mutatur in i, ut legere legi.
10. Futurum infinitivi fit ex participio perfecti cum iri vel de futuro in dus cum esse, ut, amatum iri vel amandum esse.
11. Secunda persona præsentis & tertiæ conjugationis.

Secunda etiam persona futuri indicativo primæ & secundæ conjugationis i mutatur in e ut, is fit.

jugation i is changed into e, as, is becomes eris or ere,

abis is changed into aberis, or abere ebis is turned into eberis or ebere.

M. But what tenses are those which are formed from the present tense?

J. Five tenses are formed from the perfect tense, which this short verse retains for memory sake, viz. perfect, pluperfect, perfect, pluperfect, future, perfect and pluperfect.

But from the present tense of the indicative mood is formed the preterimperfect and future tense of the same, and the present and imperfect of all other moods.

M. Conjugate laudo in the second person thrô every mood and tense?

J. Thou--doft--didft--haft--hadft shalt---do thou---maift---should--- might have--- could have had--- can hereafter--- to--- to have-- to hereafter-- praise, of praising, in praising, to praise, to praise, to be praised.

M. Conjugate laudo in the persons through every mood and tense?

J. I praise, thou doft praise, he doth praise, we do commend, ye commend, they commend, I did commend, thou didft commend, &c.

M. Laudor in the perfect tense?

J. I have been praised, because verbs in or have their perfect tense with those that defcend of it, from the latter supine by adding s and the verb sum or fui, as, &c. I have been commended, taught, read, heard, &c.

is, fit, eris vel ere.

abis fit aberis vel aberei ebis fit eberis vel ebere.

M. Quæ autem funt tempora ex præfenti formata?

J. Ex præterito perfecto quinque tempora formantur, memoriâ ergo hic verficulus retenet,

i--ram--rim--ffem--ro--ffe. aft formabit cætera præfens; ut, ex laudavi fit laudaveram, laudaverim, laudaviffem, laudavero, laudaviffe, quod plenius videatur Praxi antecedente.

M. Conjuga laudo in fecundâ perfonâ per omnes modos & tempora?

J. Laud---as---abas--- avifti--- averas-- abis-- a--ato-- es-- ares-- averis--aviffes--averis--are---aviffe aturum effe---andi---ando--andum atum--atu--ans--aturus

M. Conjuga laudo in perfonis per omnes modos & tempora?

J. Laud o as at amus atis ant abam abas abat abamus abatis abant avi avifti avit avimus aviftis averunt vel avêre; &c.

M. Laudor in perfecto?

J. Laudatus fum vel fui; quia verba in or habent perfectum cum prole, ex pofteriori fupino addendo s & fum vel fui; ut, laudatus, doctus, lectus, auditus fum, eram, fim, effem, ero, effe

---

Of the *Verb* Sum, *and the* perfect *Tense of Verbs in* or.

M. Sum then in the perfect tense.

J. Fui *I have been*, and wants the Supines.

M. Conjugate *Sum* in the Persons through every Mood and Tense?

J. The Indicative Mood and *Present Tense.*
I am, thou art, he is, we are, ye are, they are.
Preterimperfect Tense.
I was, thou waft, he was, we were, ye were, they were.
Preterperfect Tense.
I have been, thou haft been, &c.
Preterpluperfect Tense.
I had been, thou hadft been, &c.
Future Tense.
I fhall or will be, thou fhalt, &c.

The Conjunctive Mood.
Present Tense.
I may be, thou mayft be, &c.
Preterimperfect Tense.
I might be, thou fhould be, &c.
Preterperfect Tense.
I might have been, thou, &c.
Preterpluperfect Tense.
I might have had been, thou, &c.
Future Tense.
I may be hereafter, thou canft, &c.

The Imperative Mood.
Present Tense.
Be thou, let him be, let us be, be ye, let them be.
The Infinitive Mood.
Present and Preterimperfect Tenses.
Effe, to be.
Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses.
Fuiffe, to have been.

De *Verbo* Sum, & perfecto *Paffivæ.*

M. *Sum* igitur in perfecto?

J. Fui, & caret Supinis.

M. Conjuga *Sum* in perfonis per omnes modos & tempora?

J. Modus Indicativus.
Tempus Præfens.

Ego	*tu*	*ille*	*Nos*	*vos*	*illi.*
Sum,	es,	eft.	Sumus,	eftis,	funt.

Tempus Imperfectum.

era	m	s	t.	mus	tis	nt.

Tempus Perfectum.

Fu i	ifti	it.	imus	iftis	erunt / êre.

Plufquamperfectum.

Fuera	m	s	t.	mus	tis	nt.

Tempus Futurum.

er o	is	it.	imus	itis	unt.

Modus Conjunctivus.
Tempus Præfens.

Sim	fis	fit.	fimus	fitis	fint.

Tempus Imperfectum.

Effe	m	s	t.	mus	tis	nt.

Tempus Perfectum.

Fueri	m	s	t.	mus	tis	nt.

Plufquamperfectum.

Fuiffe	m	s	t	mus	tis	nt.

Tempus Futurum.

Fuer o	is	it	imus	itis	int.

Modus Imperativus, *Præfens.*

fis	fit		fitis	fint.
es	efto	fimus	efte	funto.
efto			eftote.

Modus Infinitivus.
Præfens & Imperfectum.
Effe.
Perfectum & Plufquamperfectum.
Fuiffe.

Future Tense.

To be hereafter.

M. Now Conjugate Laudor in the third person singular thrô every Mood and Tense?

J. He is praised, he was commended, he hath been, he had been, he will or shall be. Let him be, he may be, he should be, he might have been, he would have had been, he may be hereafter; to be; to have or had been; hereafter to be; having, to be praised.

Of the Persons and Numbers of Verbs.

M. How many Persons in Verbs?

J. Persons are three; the first, second and third; and Numbers are two, the singular and plural.

M. How is Person and Number of Verbs known?

J. The Nominative case either expressed or understood comes before a finite verb personal, which directs the verb to be made the same Number and Person, as, I praise, and am praised.

Thou didst warn, and wast warned.

Peter heareth, and is heard.

We have taught, and have been taught.

Ye will command, and shall be bidden.

We cannot mend things past.

Where *nos* we, is understood.

M. Why do you say, doth the King come (not)?

J. Because the Nominative case is put after verbs of asking and commanding, or their signs, which nevertheless guides the verbs in the same number and person, as,

---

Futurum.

Fore, vel Futurum esse.

M. Jam conjuga laudor in tertiâ personâ singulari per omnes Modos & Tempora?

J. Laud-atur, abatur, atus est vel fuit, atus erat vel fuerat; abitur, etur, ator, êtur, aretur, atus sit vel fuerit, atus esset vel fuisset, atus erit vel fuerit, ari, atum iri vel andum esse, atus andus.

De Personis & Verborum Numeris.

M. Quot sunt Personæ?

J. Personæ sunt tres, prima, secunda, tertia, & numeri sunt duo Singularis & Pluralis.

M. Unde dignoscuntur Persona & Numerus verborum?

J. Nominativus expressus vel intellectus præcedit verbum personale finitum simili Numero & Personâ, ut Ego laudo, & laudor.

Tu monebas & monebaris.

Petrus audit & auditur.

Nos docuimus & docti sumus.

Vos jubetis & jubêmini.

Præterita mutare non possumus, hoc est, nos non possumus.

M. Quare dicis venitne Rex (non) Rex venitne?

J. Quia Nominativus post-ponitur verbis Interrogandi & Imperandi simili numero & personâ, ut,

Do

Do thou read, and let us be heard.

Let us hear one another.

M. What part of speech is laudo?

J. It is a verb active of the first conjugation.

M. Why so?

J. It is a Verb because it is a word declined by Moods and Tenses.

It is an active, because it signifies to do, and ending in o; also it can make a passive, by adding r, &c.

It is of the first Conjugation, because it ends in o with a consonant before it.

Of the First Conjugation.

M. Decline laudo?

J. Laudo, &c. are the three Radical Tenses.

M. Why doth it make avi in the perfect tense, and atum in the supine?

J. Verbs of the first Conjugation do form the perfect tense in avi, and the supine in atum.

M. Juvo then in the perfect tense?

J. It makes juvi and jutum in the supine, because twenty two verbs of the first conjugation do form the perfect tense and supine irregularly, namely.

Legito tu, & audiamur nos.

Audiamus nos vicissim.

M. Laudo, quæ pars orationis?

J. Est verbum activum primæ conjugationis.

M. Quare?

J. Verbum est quia vox est variabilis per modos & tempora.

Activum est quia agere significat, & in o finitum; passivum in or etiam formare potest, ut, laudor.

Est primæ conjugationis quia exit in o præcedente consonâ, &c.

De Prima Conjugatione.

M. Laudo inflecte?

Laudo, laudavi, laudatum.

M. Quare dat laudavi in perfecto & laudatum in supino?

J. Verba primæ Conjugationis formant perfectum in avi, & supinum in atum.

M. Juvo igitur in perfecto?

J. Juvo dat juvi & jutum in supino quia viginti duo verba primæ conjugationis perfectum & supinum irregulariter formant, viz.

L 2

vi.

Vi.
	To
Juvo, juvi, jutum	help
Lavo, lavi, lavatum & lotum	wash

ui.
Crepo, crepui, crepitum	crack
cubo, cubui, cubitum	ly down
domo, domui, domitum	tame
frico, fricui, frictum	rub
mico, micui, caret supinis	shine
neco, necui, nectum	kill
seco, secui, sectum	cut
sono, sonui, sonitum	sound
tono, tonui, tonitum	thunder
veto, vetui, vetitum	forbid

ui & avi.
applico }	apply
complico } in itum & avi.	to fold
explico }	unfold
implico }	intangle
coen o avi & atus sum atum	sup
jur o avi & atus sum atum	swear
pot o avi & atus sum um	drink
titub o avi & atus sum atum	stumble

i Perfecto.
Do, dedi, datum	give
sto, steti, statum	stand
asto, astiti, astitum	stand by

Of the Second Conjugation.

M. Moneo in perfecto?

J. Monui & monitum in supino, quia verba secundæ conjugationis formant perfectum in ui, & supinum in itum.

Præter hæc verba sequentia perfectum aliter formant

di perfecto.
	To
Frendeo, frendi, fressum	gnash
sedeo, sedi, sessum	sit
strideo, stridi, caret supinis	gnash
video, vidi, visum	see
mordeo, momordi, morsum	bite
pendeo, pependi, pensum	hang

spondeo, spopondi, sponsum	betroth
tondeo, totondi, tonsum	clip

ui perfecto.
Censeo, censui, censum	think
doceo, docui, doctum	teach
lateo, latui, latitum	ly hid
misceo, miscui { mistum } { mixtum }	mingle
sorbeo, sorbui, sorptum	sip
teneo, tenui, tentum	hold
torreo, torrui, tostum	rost

evi perfecto.
aboleo, abolevi, abolitum	abolish
adoleo, adolevi, adultum	grow
exoleo, exolevi, exoletum	decay
inoleo, inolevi, inoletu,	grow bigger
obsoleo, obsolevi, obsoletum	out (of use
peroleo, perolevi, perolitum	smell (rank
cieo, cievi, citum	stir up
deleo, delevi, deletum	blot out
fleo, flevi, fletum	weep
neo, nevi, netum	spin
pleo, plevi, pletum	fill
vieo, vievi, vietum	bind

si perfecto.
algeo, alsi, caret supinis	be cold
ardeo, arsi, arsum	burn
fulgeo, fulsi, caret supinis	glister
hæreo, hæsi, hæsum	stick to
indulgeo, indulsi, indultum	cocker
jubeo, jussi, jussum	command or bid
maneo, mansi, mansum	tarry
mulceo, mulsi, mulsum	asswage
rideo, risi, risum	laugh
suadeo, suasi, suasum	perswade
tergeo, tersi, tersum	wipe
torqueo, torsi, torsum	wrest
turgeo, tursi, tursum	swell
urgeo, ursi, ursum	enforce

vi perfecto.
Caveo, cavi, cautum	beware
faveo, favi, fautum	favour
foveo, fovi, fotum	cherish
moveo, movi, motum	move

paveo

paveo, pavi, caret sup.	fear

xi perfecto.
Augeo, auxi, auctum	increase
frigeo, frixi, caret Supin.	be cold
luceo, luxi, caret Supin.	shine
lugeo, luxi, luctum	lament

i & us sum.
Careo, carui & cassus sum	want
mereor, merui & meritus sum	deserve
placeo, placui & placitus sum	please
prandeo, prandi & pransus sum	dine

us sum.
Audeo, ausus sum	be bold
gaudeo, gavisus sum	rejoice
soleo, solitus sum	be wont
fateor, fassus sum	confess, affirm
medeor, medicatus sum	heal
misereor, misertus sum	pity

reor, ratus sum	suppose, judge

Impersonalia.
Lib--et--itum est & uit	it listeth
lic--et--itu est & uit	it is permitted
miseret, } misertum est,	it pitieth
miserescit }	
piget, pigitu est, piguit	it repenteth
placet, placitum est	it is agreed
pertæ-det-sum est & } duit	it wearieth
pudet, puditum est & } puduit	it shameth

Cætera impersonalia regulariter formantur, ut oport---et---ebat uit--uerat..ebit---eat--- eto--eat--eret uerit--uisset--uerit--ere--uisse.

M. Arceo in supino?

J. Arceo, timeo & omnia fere neutra secundæ conjugationis habentia ui in perfecto carent supinis

---

Of the Third Conjugation.

M. Quomodo mittit perfectum & Supinum tertiæ Conjugationis?

J. Finibus ex variis flexum tibi tertia monstrat.

Omnia ergo verba hujus jam enumerantur.

bi perfecto.
	To
Bibo, bibi, bibitum	drink
lambo, lambi, caret sup.	lick
scabo, scabi, caret sup.	scratch

ci perfecto.
Facio, feci, factum	make
jacio, jeci, jactum	cast
ico, ici, ictum	smite
vinco, vici, victum	overcome

di perfecto.
Abscon--do--i--itum	hide
accend--o--i--sum	kindle
cudo, cudi, cusum	forge
defend--o--i--sum	defend
edo, edi, esum	eat
findo, fidi, fissum	cleave
fodio, fodi, fossum	dig

Of the Third Conjugation.
	To
frendo, frendi, fressum	gnash
fundo, fudi, fusum	pour out
mando, mandi, mansum	eat
occido, occidi, occasum	die
occido, occidi, occisum	kill
pando, pandi { pansum } { passum }	set open
prehen--do--di--sum	catch
rudo, rudi, caret sup.	bray
scando, scandi, scansum	climb
scindo, scidi, scissum	cut
sido, sidi, caret sup.	sink down
strido, stridi, caret sup.	gnash

gi perfecto.
ago, egi, actum	do
cogo, coegi, coactum	compel
dego, degi caret sup.	live
per-ago--egi--actum	perform
sat-ago--egi--actum	be busy
frango, fregi, fractum	break
fugio, fugi, fugitum	fly
lego, legi, lectum	read

li perfecto.
Fero tuli, latum	to bear suffer

To

perc-ello-uli-ulsum — *strike*
psallo, psalli, caret sup. — *sing*
rec-ello-uli-ulsum — *pull back*
refello, refelli, caret sup. — *refute*
tollo, sustuli, sublatum — *take away*

i perfecto.

Emo, emi, emptum — *buy*
capio, cepi, captum — *take*
rumpo, rupi, rumptum — *break*
linquo, liqui, lictum — *leave*
succur-o-ri-sum — *help*
verro, verri, versum — *brush*
sisto, stiti, statum — *make stand*
verto, verti, versum — *turn*

psi perfecto.

Carpo, carpsi, carptum — *crop*
como, compsi, comptum — *kemp*
demo, dempsi, demptum — *take away*
glubo, glupsi, gluptum — *flea*
nubo, nupsi, nuptum — *be marryed*
promo, prompsi, promptum — *draw*
repo, repsi, reptum — *crawl*
scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum — *scratch*
scribo, scripsi, scriptum — *write*
sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum — *engrave*
serpo, serpsi, serptum — *creep*
sumo, sumpsi, sumptum — *take*
tempo, tempsi, temptum — *despise*

si perfecto.

Claudo, clausi, clausum — *shut*
divido, divisi, divisum — *divide*
laedo, laesi, laesum — *hurt*
ludo, ludi, lusum — *play*
mergo, mersi, mersum — *drown*
mitto, misi, missum — *send*
plaudo, plausi, plausum — *applaud*
rado, rasi, rasum — *shave*
rodo, rosi, rosum — *gnaw*
spargo, sparsi, sparsum — *sprinkle*
trudo, trusi, trusum — *thrust*
vado, vasi, vasum — *go*
viso, visi, visum — *visit*

ss perfecto.

Cedo, cessi, cessum — *give place*
gero, gessi, gestum — *carry*

To

percutio, percussi, percussum — *smite*
premo, pressi, pressum — *press*
quatio, quassi, quassum — *shake*
uro, ussi, ustum — *burn*

ui perfecto.

Acuo, acui, acutum — *sharpen*
accino, accinui, accentum — *sing to*
alo, alui, alitum & altum — *nourish*
annuo, annui, caret sup. — *yield unto*
arguo, argui, argutum — *reprove*
colo, colui, cultum — *cultivate or till*
compesc-o-ui caret sup. — *refrain*
congruo, congrui, caret sup. — *agree to*
consul-o-ui-tum — *counsel*
desipio, desipui, caret sup. — *dote*
diluo, dilui, dilutum — *cleanse*
dispesco, dispescui, ca. sup. — *drive from*
excello, excellui, excelsum — *excel*
fremo, fremui, fremitum — *roar*
gemo, gemui, gemitum — *groan*
gigno, genui, genitum — *beget*
imbuo, imbui, imbutum — *season*
ingruo, ingrui, caret sup. — *invade*
luo, lui, luitum — *pay or satisfie*
malo, malui, caret sup. — *have rather*
meto, messui, messum — *mow*
metuo, metui, caret sup. — *fear*
minu-o-i-tum — *diminish*
molo, molui, molitum — *grind*
nolo, nolui, caret sup. — *be unwilling*
occulo, occului, occultum — *hide*
pinso, pinsui, pistum — *bake*
plecto, plexui, plexum — *punish*
pono, posui, positum — *put*
praecel-lo-lui-sum — *surpass*
rapio, rapui, raptum — *snatch*
renuo, renui, caret sup. — *slight*
ruo, rui, ruitum & rutum — *rush*
sero, serui, sertum — *lay in order*
spuo, spui, sputum — *spit*
statuo, statui, statutum — *appoint*
sternuo, sternui, sternutum — *sneese*
sterto, stertui, caret sup. — *snort*
strepo, strepui, strepitum — *make a noise*

suo

To

suo, sui, sutum — *sew*
texo, texui, textum — *weave*
tremo, tremui, tremitum — *tremble*
tribuo, tribui, tributum — *give*
volo, volui, caret sup. — *be willing*
vomo, vomui, vomitum — *vomit*

xi in perfecto.

Ango, anxi, caret sup. — *perplex*
cingo, cinxi, cinctum — *gird*
clango, clanxi, caret sup. — *sound*
coquo, coxi, coctum — *boil*
dico, dixi, dictum — *say or speak*
duco, duxi, ductum — *lead*
figo, fixi, fixum — *fasten*
fingo, finxi, fictum — *feign*
flecto, flexi, flexum — *bend*
fligo, flixi, flictum — *beat*
fluo, fluxi, fluctum — *flow*
frigo, frixi, frixum & frictum — *parch*
jungo, junxi, junctum — *joyn*
lingo, linxi, linctum — *lick*
meio / mingo — minxi, mictum — *piss*
mungo, munxi, munctum — *snite*
ningo, ninxi, caret sup. — *snow*
pingo, pinxi, pictum — *paint*
plango, planxi, planctum — *lament*
rego, rexi, rectum — *rule, govern*
ringo, rinxi, rictum — *grin*
stingo / stinguo — stinxi, stinctu — *extinguish*
stringo, strinxi, strictum — *bind*
struo, struxi, structum — *build*
sugo, suxi, caret sup. — *suck*
tego, texi, tectum — *cover*
tingo, tinxi, tinctum — *colour, dye*
traho, traxi, tractum — *draw*
veho, vexi, vectum — *carry*
vivo, vixi, victum — *live*
ungo, unxi, unctum — *anoint*

exi in perfecto.

Allicio, allexi, allectum — *allure*
diligo, dilexi, dilectum — *love*
dirigo, direxi, directum — *direct*
inspicio, inspexi, inspectum — *look into*

To

intell-igo-exi-ectum — *understand*
negligo, neglexi, neglectum — *neglect*
pergo, perrexi, / perrectum — *go forward*
quinesco, quexi, caret sup. — *not*
surgo, surrexi, surrectum — *arise*

Caetera etiam composita à rego
& specio dant *exi* perfecto.

didi in perfecto.

abdo, abdidi, abditum — *hide*
addo, addidi, additum — *add*
condo, condidi, conditum — *build*
credo, credidi, creditum — *believe*
dedo, dedidi, deditum — *yield up*
edo, edidi, editum — *publish*
indo, indidi, inditum — *put in*
obdo, obdidi, obditum — *put against*
prodo, prodidi, proditum — *betray*
reddo, reddidi, redditum — *restore*
trado, tradidi, traditum — *deliver*
vendo, vendidi, venditum — *sell*

vi perfecto.

Calvo, calvi, caret sup. — *be bald*
cerno, crevi, caret sup. — *see*
cresco, crevi, cretum — *grow*
lavo, lavi, lavatum — *wash*
nosco, novi, notum — *know*
ignosco, ignovi, ignotum — *forgive*
pasco, pavi, pastum — *feed*
quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum — *feel*
quiesco, quievi, quietum — *rest*
scisco, scivi, scitum — *determine*
sero, sevi, satum — *plant, sow*
sino, sivi, situm — *suffer*
solvo, solvi, solutum — *loose*
sperno, sprevi, spretum — *despise*
sterno, stravi, stratum — *strow*
suesco, suevi, suetum — *accustom*
tero, trivi, tritum — *wear*
volvo, volvi, volutum — *roll*

ivi perfecto.

arcess-o-ivi-um — *fetch, summon*
cupio, cupivi, cupitum — *desire*
lacess-o-ivi-itum — *provoke*
peto, petivi, petitum — *ask*

fido

To
fido dat fifus fum caret fup. *truft*

M. Cado in perfecto ?

J. Cecïdi (non) cedi quia feptendecim verba tertiæ conjugationis geminant perfectum.

cado, cecïdi, cafum	*to fall*
cædo, cecidi, cæfum	*beat*
cano, cecini, cantum	*fing*
curro, cucurri, curfum	*run*
decu--rro--curri--rfum	*run out*
præcu--rro--curri--rfum	*run before*
difco, didifci, caret fup.	*learn*
fallo, fefelli, falfum	*deceive*
pario, peperi, partum	*bring forth*
pedo, pepedi, peditum	*fart*
pello, pepuli, pulfum	*drive out*
pendo, pependi, penfum	*weigh*
pofco, popofci, caret fup.	*require*
tango, tetigi, tactum	*touch*
te--ndo-tendi-nfum & ntum	*ftretch*
tundo, tutudi, tunfum	*knock*

In verbis vero compofitis perfectum non geminatur nifi in his tantum fequentibus do fere didi fto ftiti oleo olevi difco didifci, & pofco popofci.

M. Capeffo in perfecto ?

J. Duodecim tertiæ conjugationis perfecto redundant

capeffo,capeffi,capeffivi, capeffitum	*to take*
faceff--o--i & ivi--itum	*difmifs*
inceff--o--i & ivi--itum	*provoke*
lino,lini,livi & levi litum	*befmear*
necto,nexi & nexui nexum	*knit*
pecto { pexi } pexum { pexui } pectum	*kemb*
pango, panxi & pepegi pactum	*bargain*
parco,parci, & peperci car.fu.	*fpare*
pluo,plui & pluvi, plutum	*rain*

To
pu-ngo-nxi & pugi-nctum	*prick*
fapio, fapui & fapivi car.	*be wife*
vello,velli & vulfi vulfum	*pluck*
verro, verri,& verfi verfum	*brufh*

M. Recita Deponentia verba irregularia tertiæ conjugationis ?

J. Æditu--or--tus fum, *to overfee a Church.*

adipifcor adeptus fum	*obtain,get*
ampledtor, amplexus fum	*embrace*
avertor averfus fum	*abhor*
calvor, fruftratus fum	*difappoint*
comm-inifcor--entus fum	*invent*
complector,complexus fum	*contain*
exper--gifcor--ectus fum	*awake*
fruor,fructus & fruitus fum	*enjoy*
fungor, functus fum	*exercife duty*
gradior, greffus fum	*go by fteps*
irafcor, iratus fum	*be angry*
labafcor, lapfus fum	*faint,fail*
labor, lapfus fum	*flide or fall*
liqu--or--ifactus fum	*diffolve,drop*
loquor,locutus fum	*fpeak*
morior, mortuus fum	*die*
nacifcor, nactus fum	*get,obtain*
nafcor,natus fum	*be born,fpring*
nitor,nifus & nixus fum	*endeavour*
pacifcor,pactus fum	*bargain*
pafcor, paftus fum	*feed*
patior, paffus fum	*fuffer*
proficifcor, profectus fu	*go forward*
quæror, quæftus fum	*complain*
redipifcor,redeptus fum	*recover*
reminifcor, recordatus fum	*remember*
revertor,reverfus & reverti	*return*
ringor, caret præterito	*grin,fret*
fequor,fecutus fum	*follow*
tuor, tuitus fum	*behold*
vefcor, paftus fum	*feed on, eat*
ulcifcor, ultus fum	*be revenged*
utor, ufus fum	*ufe,occupy*

Of the Fourth Conjugation.

M. Audio in perfecto ?

J. Audivi & auditum in fupino ; format io quartis ivi defcendit in itum.

Duo viginti vero excipienda quæ funt anomala.

To
comperio, caret, compertum	*find*
reperio,caret,repertu	*find by chance*
farcio, farci, fartum	*ftuff, cram*
venio, veni, ventum	*come*

fi perfecto.
refercio,referfi,refertu	*ftuff again*
fulcio, fulfi, fultum	*prop*
ferio, percuffi, caret fup.	*ftrike*
haurio, haufi, hauftum	*draw*
raucio, raufi, raufum	*be hoarfe*
farcio, farfi, fartum	*patch*
fentio, fenfi, fenfum	*perceive*
fepio, fepfi, feptum	*hedge*

ui perfecto.
Aperio, aperui,apertum	*open*
operio, operui, opertum	*cover*
amicio,amicui,amictu	*put on cloaths*
falio,falui & falii, faltum	*leap*

To
fio dat factus fum	*be made or done*
	vi perfecto.
Furo, infanivi, caret	*be enraged*
veneo, venivi, venum	*be fold*
eo, ivi, itum	*go*
queo, quivi, quitum	*may or can*
fancio { fancivi } fancitu { fanxi } fanctu	*eftablifh*
Singult--io--ivi--tum	*fob*
fepeli--o--vi--fepultum	*bury*

Deponentia verba.
affentior, affenfus fum	*confent*
experior, expertus fum	*try*
operior, opertus fum	*look,ftay for*
ordior, orfus fum	*begin*
orior, ortus fum	*arife*
metior, menfus fum	*meafure*
Mentior, mentitus fum	*feign*
molior, molitus fum	*contrive*
largior, largitus fum	*give liberally*
crinior, crinitus fum	*be hairy*
partior, partitus fum	*divide*
fortior, fortitus fum	*caft,draw lots*
potior,potitus fum	*obtain,enjoy*

Obfervations upon certain Verbs.	Notæ de quibufdam Verbis.
M. Cerno in the perfect tenfe ?	M. Cerno in perfecto ?
J. Crevi, but there are eleven preterperfect tenfes which are only found in compofition,namely,	J. Crevi,fed undecim funt perfecta quæ compofitione tantum reperta, viz.
I have beaten, filled from, &c.	Cellui, plevi, ex cello, pleo
I have feen, fhaken from, &c.	Crevi,quaffi ex cerno,quatio
I have lain down, anointed from, &c.	Cubui levi, ex cumbo, leo
I have fhewed,allured from,&c.	Nivi lexi, ex niveo lacio
I have fupt, feen from, &c.	Sorpfi fpexi, ex forbeo fpecio
	M. Vafi

I have gone from vado, as, I have assaulted.

M. Ambigo in the perfect tense?

J. Ambigo *to doubt*, wants both the preterperfect tense and supines; so also does, &c. *to lift up, to desire, to flatter, to be reputed, to grow thick, to gape, to be yellow, to rage, to become smooth, to glow, to be dull, to yawn, to totter, to be black and blew, to mourn, to knit, to be able, to rage, to glister, to water, to bend.*

Passives also want the perfect tense, whose actives want the supines.

Also Inceptives in sco, and meditatives, except, &c. *to bring forth,* and to *be hungry,* which two verbs make *parturitum* & *esuritum* in the supine.

M. Why doth gestio want the supines?

J. These verbs also want the supines, *to leap away, to leap forwards, to invade, to desire, to squander away.*

Of Species and Figure of Verbs.

M. How manifold is the species of a verb?

J. It is two-fold, primitive, as, lego *I read,* and derivative, as, lecturio, *to desire to read.*

Figure also is twofold simple, as *pono* I put, and compound as, *compono* I compose or make.

Give me all its Compounds according to the Alphabet?

J. To set on, to compare, to lay down, to put in or upon, to put between or among, to set against, to set before, to set out, to

Vasi ex vado, ut, invasi.

M. Ambigo in perfecto?

J. Ambigo caret præterito & supinis; sic etiam attollo, aveo, ceveo, clueo, denseo, fatisco, flaveo, furo, glabreo, glisco, hebeo, hisco, labeo, liveo, mæreo, nexo, polleo, rabio, renideo, rigor, vergo.

Etiam Passiva quorum activa carent supinis.

Item Inceptiva in sco, & meditativa præter, parturio & esurio quæ duo dant parturitum & esuritum supino.

M. Gestio caret supinis quare?

J. Verba sequentia etiam carent supinis, absilio, prosilio, incesso, gestio, prodigo.

De Speciebus & Verborum Figuris.

M. Quotuplex est species verborum?

J. Duplex; primitiva, ut lego; & derivativa, ut lecturio.

Figura etiam est simplex, ut, pono; & composita, ut compono.

M. Dic mihi omnia composita secundum Alphabetum?

J. Appono, compono, depono, expono, impono, interpono, oppono, præpono, propono, postpono,

set after, to put on again, to put aside, to put over, to put under, to remove.

M. What kind of verb is fero *to bear?*

J. It is a simple verb.

M. Rehearse the compounds alphabetically.

J. To bring, to carry away, to prefer, to discourse, to carry from, to delay, to bring out, to bring in, to present, to bring again, to bear with, to interpret or translate.

M. Why are Verbs compounded?

J. Because they unloose the simple?

M. Whence is affero compounded?

J. Of *ad* and *fero* to bear unto.

M. Why *affero* (not) *adfero?*

J. For smooth pronunciation sake.

Also the Præposition *abs* coming before *f* is changed into *au.*

In, con, before *b p* change *n* Into *im.* But before *l m r* they change *n* into the following consonant.

But *n* in *con* is lost before a vowel, as, &c. *to buy up in great quantities.*

ad before c f g l n p r s t.

ob also before c f g p.

sub also before c f g m p.

per and *inter* before l, and for the most part x before f change the last Letter into the following Consonant.

ad ob trans dis for the most part, loose the last letter in composition, as, &c. *to open, to let pass, to pass over, to pull off.*

M. Why do you say *infringo* (not) *infrango.*

pono, repono, sepono, superpono, suppono, transpono.

M. Fero quale Verbum?

J. Est verbum simplex.

M. Recita composita alphabetice?

J. Affero, aufero, antefero, confero, defero, differo, effero, infero, offero, refero, suffero, transfero.

M. Quare sunt verba composita?

J. Quia simplicia exolverunt.

M. Affero unde componitur?

J. Ex *ad* & *fero.*

M. *Af* pro *ad* quare?

J. Euphoniæ gratia.

Abs etiam ante *f* mutatur in *au.*

In, con, ante *b p* mutant *n* in *im,* sed ante *l m r* mutant *n* in consonam sequentem.

n vero in *con* amissum ante vocalem ut, *coemo* (non) *conemo.*

ad ante c f g l n p r s t.

ob etiam ante c f g p.

sub item ante c f g m p.

per & *inter* ante l fere x ante f mutant ultimam in consonam sequentem, ut effero (non) exfero.

ad, ob, trans, dis, fere amittunt ultimam, ut *aperio, omitto, trajicio, divello.*

M. Quare dicis *infringo* (non) *infrango?*

J. These Verbs following in composition change their first Vowel into i in the present tense, and those derived from it, as, to confess, to take, to break, to cast, to allure and deceive, to press, to behold.

To do, *except* to compel, to live, to finish, to be busie, and to turn round.

To rule, *except* to go on, to arise.

To sit, *except* to sit upon.

To buy, *except* to buy a great quantity.

To bargain, *except* to fasten into the ground, to fasten against, to plant again, to ram or fasten about.

Also *to do*, if *facio* be compounded with a Noun, or with, &c. *well, ill, enough.*

M. Why applodo *to stamp* (not) applaudo?

J. Because plaudo *to clap hands for joy*, in composition makes plodo; and in the following verbs *a* is changed into *u*.

To *lick* or *tread upon*, to *plead*, to *shut*, to *wash*, to *shake*, to *leap*, to *dance*, and to *scratch*.

To *gather*, to *choose*, to *elect*, to *cull*, do make *legi* in the perfect tense.

To *love*, to *understand*, to *neglect*, do make *lexi*; but the rest of the compounds of *lego* change no Vowel.

M. Why condemno *to condemn* (not) condamno.

J. The following Verbs in composition change their first Vowel into *e* in every tense, namely,

To drive away, to shine, to catch at, to pick, to condemn, to deceive, to be weary.

To stuff, to go step by step,

J. Hæc sequentia compositione primam mutant vocalem in i tempore præsenti cum prole.

Fateor, capio, frango, jacio, lacio, premo, specio.

Ago, *excipe* cogo, dego, perago, satago & circumago.

Rego, *excipe* pergo & surgo.

Sedeo, *excipe* supersedeo.
Emo, *excipe* coemo.

Pango, *excipe* depango, oppango, repango, circumpango.

Facio etiam si componitur nomine, aut, *bene, male, satis.*

M. Quare applodo (non) applaudo?

J. Quia plaudo compositione dat plodo, & in sequentibus *a* mutatur in *u*.

Calco, causor, claudo, lavo, quatio, saltoq; scalpo.

Colligo, deligo, eligo, seligo, faciunt *legi* in perfecto.

Diligo, intelligo, negligo, dant *lexi*; cætera vero composita a *lego* nullam mutant vocalem.

M. Quare condemno (non) condamno?

J. Omnibus Temporibus sequentia in compositione primam vocalem mutant in e, *viz.*

Arceo, cando, capto, carpo, damno, fallo, fatiscor.

Farcio, gradior;   to

to toss, to share, to effect, to devote, and to climb.

To sprinkle, to handle, to suckle, *except* ablacto *to wean.*

Also from pasco *to feed*, &c. *to refrain* and *to separate*, which two Verbs make *ui* in the perfect tense.

From juro *to swear*, only these two, &c. *to swear solemnly* and *to swear falsly.*

From pario *to bring forth*, &c. to know by experience, and to find by chance, do change, and make peri in *the perfect tense.*

From mando *to chew*, only, &c. to commend.

From halo *to breath*, only, &c. *to pant.*

From patior *to endure* only, &c. to *bear constantly.*

The rest of their Compounds retain the Letters of the simple Verbs.

M. Why prohibeo *to forbid* (not) *prohabeo.*

J. These simple Verbs in composition, and in every tense, change their first Vowel into *i*, namely,

To fall, to beat, to sing, to want, to hurt, to seek, to dance, to leap, to be wise.

To appoint, to snatch, to be silent, to touch, to keep, to have, *except*, &c. to value lower.

Also maneo *to tarry*, except, &c. to abide constantly, and to remain behind.

From placeo *to please*, displicio *displease.*

M. Why *contusum* in the supine (not) *contunsum* from *tundo to knock.*

J. These Supines in Composition, are changed on this manner.

---

cio, patro, sacroque scando.

Spargo, tracto, lacto, *excipe* ablacto.

à pasco etiam compesco & dispesco, quæ dant *ui* in perfecto.

à Juro, dejero, pejero tantum.

à Pario, comperio & reperio, quæ dant perfecto *peri.*

à Mando, commendo solum.

Ex halo, anhelo tantum.

à patior perpetior solum.

Cætera composita sequuntur formam simplicium.

M. Quare prohibeo (non) prohabeo?

J. Omnibus temporibus hæc simplicia mutant primam Vocalem in *i* compositione, *viz.*

Cado, cædo, cano, egeo, lædo, quæro, salio, sapio.

Statuo, rapio, taceo, tango, teneo, habeo, nisi posthabeo.

Et maneo, *excipe* permaneo, remaneoque.

à placeo, displicio tantum.

M. Quare *contusum* in supino (non) *contunsum* ex *tundo?*

J. Hæc supina compositione hoc modo mutantur.

Tunsum in Composition is made *tusum*.

Ruitum is made *rutum to rush*; saltum makes sultum *to leap*; sutum makes situm *to sew*; datum makes ditum *to give*; statum makes stitum *to stand*; adoleo, adultum *to appease*; agnosco, agnitum *to acknowledge*, and cognosco, cognitum *to be informed*;

Edo in composition makes the supine esum *to eat*; only comedo *to eat up*, makes both esum and estum.

The following supines in composition change the first Vowel into e.

To sing, to take, to find fault, to make, and to stuff.

To cast, to snatch, to sprinkle, and to bring forth.

Of certain irregular and defective Verbs.

M. Fero in the Imperative Mood?
J. Fer, ferto, *be thou born or suffered,*
M. Eo *I go,* in the imperfect tense?
J. Ibam *I went*; and in the future tense ibo *I will go*; also in the Participle of the present tense, Nom. iens. Gen. euntis.
M. Queo and nequeo in the Imperative?
J. They want the Imperative; in other Moods they are declined like eo.
M. Possum in the Imperative?
J. *Possum, malo, volo* want the Imperative.
I am unwilling, makes, &c. don't thou; Plurally, don't ye.
M. Whence is *Possum* conjugated?

Tunsum fit *tusum* compositione.

Ruitum fit rutum; saltum fit sultum; sutum fit situm; datum fit ditum; statum fit stitum; adoleo dat adultum; agnosco dat agnitum; & cognosco cognitum.

Edo compositione dat esum; comedo vero dat esum & estum.

Supina sequentia in compositione primam vocalem mutant in e.
Cantum, captum, carptum, factumque fartum.
Jactum, raptum, sparsumque partum.

De quibusdam anomalibus, & verborum defectivis.

M. Fero in Imperativo?
J. Fer---ferto.
M. Eo in Imperfecto?
J. Ibam & ibo in futuro; iens euntis etiam in participio.

M. Queo & nequeo in Imperativo?
J. Imperativo desunt. Cæteris modis conjugantur, ut eo.

M. Possum in Imperativo?
J. Possum, malo, volo carent Imperativo.
Nolo dat noli nolito; Pluraliter nolite, nolitote.
M. Unde possum conjugatur?
J. Pos-

J. Possum is conjugated like sum; provided we observe, that wheresoever sum begins with s, it takes pos before it; where sum begins with e it takes pot before it; except essem, esse, and where sum begins with f, that Letter is changed into pot.

M. Conjugate prosum *I profit?*
J. *Prosum* is conjugated like sum; only it takes d before it in every Person which begins with a Vowel, as, pro-des (not) pro-es, *thou dost good.*

M. Conjugate *malo, nolo* and *volo?*
J. Indicative Mood Present Tense, I had rather, thou hadst rather, &c.
I am unwilling, thou art unwilling, he is unwilling, &c.
I will, thou wilt, he will, we will; the rest are regular by the third conjugation.

M. In the present tense of the Conjunctive Mood?
J. I may be more willing, unwilling, &c.
Imperfect tense, I should be more willing, unwilling, willing.
In the Infinitive, to be more willing, unwilling, willing, in all other tenses they are regularly formed by the third Conjugation.

M. Conjugate edo *to eat?*
J. Indicative Mood present tense, I eat, thou eatest, he eateth. *Imperfect tense* of the Conjunctive Mood, I might eat, &c. In the Infinitive Mood *to eat*; the rest of the tenses do not abound, but are regularly formed by the third Conjugation.

M. What part of Speech is aio?

J. Possum conjugatur ut sum; modo notandum ubique sum incipit cum s accipit pos; ubi incipit cum e accipit pot; nisi essem esse, ubi etiam incipit cum f mutatur in pot.

J. Conjuga prosum?
J. Prosum conjugatur ut sum; nisi accipit d in omnibus personis cum vocali incipientibus ut, pro-des.

M. Conjuga malo, nolo, volo?
J. Indic. præsens, ma--lo--vis--vult--lumus--vultis--lunt, &c.

No---lo---nvis--- nvult---lumus, nvultis---lunt, &c.

Volo, vis, vult, volumus, vultis, volunt, &c. per tertiam regulariter.

M. In præsenti conjunctivi?

J. Malim, nolim, velim.

Imperfecto, mallem, nollem, vellem.

Infinitivo, malle, nolle, velle, Cæteris nusquam non recte per tertiam conjugationem formantur.

M. Edo conjuga?
J. Indicativi Præsens, edo, edis vel es, edit vel est, &c. Imperfecto Conjunctivi, ederem vel essem, &c. Infinitivo, edere vel esse. Cætera non redundant & per tertiam regulariter formantur.

M. Aio, quæ pars orationis?
Est

It is a Verb defective in declining; so are these, &c. I say, avaunt, give, rest you merry, God save you, farewel, effect, I durst, I should be, quoth I, he rejoiced, to remember, to hate, to begin to know, to pray, &c.

M. Conjugate these defective Verbs?

J. *Indicative Mood present tense* wants the first and second person plural; *imperfect* is intire; *Imperative* only *ai*; *Conjunct. present* wants the first person; only the second person in the Imperative; wants all but the second person Imperative; hath only the second person *imperative*; and the present tense *infinitive* wants the first and second person plural, &c so doth *forem*, which hath *infinitive*, wants the second person plural, *present tense*, *preterimperfect tense indicative Mood* is perfect. *Perfect Tense* has only the second and third person singular.

The *future* wants the first person singular. *Imperative* want the third singular, and first plural. *Conjunctive Mood present Tense* is perfect; all others are wanting, except the *Participle* of the *present tense*.

Ovat *he rejoiceth*, ovans *rejoicing*; memini, &c. are perfect tenses, and are regular in those tenses, that come from it; memini only has an *Imperative Mood*.

Quæso wants all but the first persons.

There is---will be---may be---to be---wanting.

These four Words are only read in composition, as addor *I am grown*, condor *I am framed*.

Infit be begins is only used.

Est Verbum defectivum, sic etiam sunt aio, apage, cædo, ave, salve, vale, faxo vel faxim, ausim, forem, inquio, ovat, memini, odi, cæpi, novi, quæso, defit, infit, dor, for, der, fer, dic, duc, fac.

M. Conjuga hæc verba defectiva?

J. Modus Indicativus tempus præsens, *aio, ais, ait.* Pluraliter *aiunt*; *aieba--m--s--t--mus--tis--nt.* Imperative *ai*; Conjunct. *aias, aiat, aiamus, aiatis, aiant.* Imperat, *apage.* Pluraliter *apagite.*

Cedo pro cedito. *Plur.* cedite.

Ave, salve, vale. *Plur.* te, tote, Infin. ere.

Faxi--ausi--m--s--t *Plur.* nt.

Fore--m--s--t *Pl.* nt. Inf. fore
Inqu---io---is---it--- imus---iunt. iebam--iebas--iebat-- iebamus--iebatis--iebant. isti---it---ies--iet--iemus--ietis--ient. e--ite--itote---iunto- - iam--ias--iat--iamus--iatis iant--- iens.

Ovat Participium ovans; memini, odi, cæpi, novi, perfecto cum prole regulariter sunt; memini habet Imperativum.

Quæso Pluraliter *quæsumus.*

Defit, defi--et--at--eri.

Dor, for, der, fer, tantum leguntur in compositis, ut *addor, condor.*

Infit tantum in usu est.

Thes

These Four are Imperative Verbs.

Imperative *scio, fio* want, and *soleo* wants the first person future.

Sis, &c. are contracted Verbs, viz. *sis* for *si vis*, *sultis* for *si vultis*, *sodes* for *si audes*, and some others,

Of improving Verbs.

Use Makes perfectness, therefore turn these into Latine, &c.

The Present Tense.
With all my heart, I am an *Englishman*. Thou art a *French-man*. He is a *Dutchman*. We are diligent. Ye are negligent.
They are Truants.

Præterimperfect Tense.
I was not in School Yesterday.
Thou wast not at Church yesterday.
He was not at home yesterday,
We were idle yesterday.
Ye were obedient yesterday.
They were careful yesterday.

Præterperfect Tense of Sum.
I have been at Church; thou hast been in the Garden; he has been at *London*; we have been at School; ye have been at home; they have been in the Hall.

Præterpluperfect Tense.
I had not been at Church yesterday, and therefore I was not happy.
He had been with me, but then I was not at Home.
We had not been at School yesterday, &c.

Future Tense.
I will be more diligent hereafter than I have been, God willing.
Thou wilt be a learned and

Dic, duc, fer, fac Imperativa sunt.

Scio, fio Imperativa non habent; *sci* & *fi* nec *soleo, solebo* futuro.

Sis, sultis, sodes sunt Verba contracta ex *si vis, si vultis, si audes*, &c.

De amplificatione Verborum.

M. Taurum feret, qui vitulum tulit; vertas igitur hæc Latine, &c.
Præsens.
J. Toto corde, Ego sum *Anglus*; tu es *Gallus*; Ille est *Teutonicus.* Nos sumus diligentes; Vos estis negligentes.
Illi sunt Emansores.
Imperfectum.
Heri non eram in Schola.

Non eras in Templo.
Non erat Domi.
Nos eramus otiosi.
Vos eratis obedientes.
Illi erant seduli.
Perfectum.
Ego fui Templo; tu fuisti horto. ille fuit *Londini*; nos fuimus Schola; vos fuistis domi; illi fuère aula.

Plusquamperfectum.
Heri non eram Templo igitur non eram etiam fœlix.
Fueras in horto nostro.
Fuerat apud me, sed tunc non fui domi.
Heri Schola non fueramus, &c.

Futurum.
Posthac ero diligentior quam fui, Deo volente.
Tu eris vir doctus & utilis;

N   pro-

profitable man; he will be a learned man becaufe he is diligent; we will be at School to morrow, God willing; ye fhall be dear to me if ye will be diligent; to morrow my Brethren will not be at School.

M. Let us hear the Conjunctive?

My Father will have me be obedient to my Mafter; that thou be diligent; that he be modeft; that we be fober; that ye be early; that they be learned.

Imperfect Tense.

My Mothers will is that I fhould be thy companion; that thou wouldft be in thy chamber by fix a clock; if he were godly he would have been obedient; when we were godly Boys we were diligent; I wifh ye were temperate, wife; O! that they were obedient to their Parents, &c. through every *Tense.*

M. Let us hear the Imperative?

J. Be thou godly and diligent? Do thou be good and obedient? Let us be filent, or hold our Tongues; fee that every one of you boys be obedient? be ye merciful. Let every Boy be at School by feven a Clock to morrow morning.

M. How do you exprefs in Latine?

J. I have got fine cloths.
Thou haft two fair Sifters.
He hath the beft Pen.
We have four Sparrows.
Ye have a gallant Houfe.
They have more Books than we, &c.

M. Tranflate all thefe with the Verb *eft.*

ille erit vir doctus, quia eft diligens; cras Deo volente, erimus in Schola; eritis mihi chari fi obedientes; cras fratres mei non erint domi.

M. Audiamus *Conjunctivum.*

J. Pater vult ut fim obediens Præceptori; ut fis diligens; ut fit modeftus; ut fimus fobrii; ut fitis matutini; ut fint docti.

Imperfectum.

Mater vult ut effem focius tuus; ut effes cubiculo tuo fexta hora; fi effet pius fuiffet obediens; cum effemus pii fuerimus diligentes; Utinam effetis fobrii; O fi! effent obedientes parentibus, &c.

M. Audiamus Imperativum?

J. Es pius & diligens.
Efto bonus & obediens;
Simus nos taciti.
O vos pueri omnes efte obedientes; eftote mifericordes; omnes pueri cras hora feptima funto in Schola, &c.

M. Quomodo dicitur Latine, &c.

J. Ego habeo veftes elegantes.
Tu habes duas venuftas forores.
Ille habet Pennam optimam
Nos habemus quatuor pafferes.
Vos habetis pulchram domum.
Illi habent plures libros quam nos, &c.

M. Vertas hæc omnia cum verbo *eft.*

J. I have fine cloths.
Thou haft two pleafant Sifters.
He has got the beft Pen.
We have four Sparrows.
Ye have a Gallant Houfe, &c.
Through all *Moods* and *Tenses.*

M. Conjugate *amo* through the Perfons.

J. I, thou, he, we, ye, they *love.*
M. What doft thou *love?*

J. I *love* God our Heavenly Father, who hath created me; and Chrift our Saviour, who hath delivered me from Sin and Death; for the only Son of God with his Blood hath pacified an angry God for us.
I alfo *love* the Holy Ghoft who by the Word and Sacraments hath fanctified us.

M. What doth *he love?*
J. *He loves* Vertue.
M. What do *ye love?*
J. Good Sciences.
M. What do *they love?*
J. Neat *Books.*
M. Conjugate *amo* together with a paffive Verb, for *Example* fake.

J. *I love* thy Brother, but *am not beloved* by him.
Thou lovest the Queen, but *wilt not be loved* by her, &c. throughout.

M. Let us hear the *Conjunctive* Mood?

J. It is my Fathers will *that I love* thee; *that thou lovest* me; *that he love* the Mafter; *that we love* honeft ftudies; *that ye love* one another; *that they love* the Word of God, &c. throughout.

M. Conjugate *opto* with *precor.*
J. *I wish* and *pray* for thee.
Thou wishest and *prayest* for me.
He wisheth and *prays* for him.
We wish and *pray* for you.

J. Sunt mihi elegantes Veftes.
Sunt tibi duæ venuftæ forores.
Eft illi penna optima.
Sunt nobis quatuor Pafferes.
Eft vobis pulchra domus.
Sunt illis plures libri quam nos.

M. Conjuga *amo* per perfonas?

J. Am o as at amus atis ant, &c.
M. Quid tu amas?

J. *Ego amo* Deum Patrem Cœleftem, qui creavit me; & Chriftum Salvatorem noftrum, qui liberavit nos à Peccato & Morte; nam unicus Filius Dei placavit nobis Deum iratum fanguine fuo.

Amo etiam fanctum Spiritum qui nos fanctificavit Verbo & Sacramentis.

M. Quid *ille amat?*
J. Virtutem.
M. Quid *vos amatis?*
J. Bonas Artes.
M. Quid *illi amant?*
J. Elegantes Libros.
M. Conjuga *amo* una cum paffivo, Exempli gratia?

J. *Ego amo* fratrem tuum, fed non amor ab illo.
Tu amas Reginam, fed non *amaberis* ab illa, &c. per omnes.

M. Audiamus *Conjunctivum?*

J. Pater vult *ut amem* te; *ut ames* me; *ut amet* Præceptorem; *ut amemus* honefta Studia; *ut ametis* vos invicem.
Si *ament* Verbum Dei, &c.

M. Conjuga *opto* una cum *precor.*
J. *Ego opto* & *precor* tibi.
Tu optas & *precaris* mihi.
Ille optat, & *precatur* illi
Nos optamus & *precamur* vobis

Ye wish and *pray* for us.

They wish and *pray to God*, &c. through every *Mood* and *Tense*.

M. Conjugate *doceo* to teach.

J. I, thou, he, we, ye, they *teach*.

M. What do you teach, or are a teaching?

J. I *teach*, or *am a teaching* Latine.

M. What *doth he teach*?

J. Arithmetick.

M. What *are ye a teaching*?

J. We *teach* Fencing.

M. What *do they teach*?

J. *They teach* good manners, &c.

M. Let us hear the *Conjunctive* Mood?

J. My Father's Will is *that I teach* thee the *Greek* Tongue.

That thou teach me Arithmetick.

That he teach him to dance.

That we teach you to Fence.

If *ye teach* us Geometry, when *they have taught* them Rhetorick.

M. Conjugate *doceo* together with a passive Verb, for *Example*.

J. *I teach* thee Latine *that you may teach* me Musick.

Thou teachest me to fence, that *thou maist be taught* by me the Art of Dancing.

He teacheth me Logick, that *he may be taught* Rhetorick by me, &c.

M. Conjugate *lego* to read?

J. I, thou, he, we, ye, they *read*.

M. What *art thou a reading*?

J. *I am reading* Corderius Colloquies.

M. What *doth he read*?

J. *He reads* Comenius's Gate.

M. What *do ye read*?

J. *We read* the Idiomatical Lexicon.

M. What *do they read*?

J. Grammar.

Vos, *optatis & precamini* nobis.

Illi optant & precantur Deo, &c.

M. Conjuga *Deceo?*

J. Doce o s t mus tis nt.

M. Quid *tu doces*?

J. *Ego doceo* Linguam Latinam.

M. Quid *ille docet*?

J. Arithmeticam.

M. Quid *vos docetis*?

J. *Docemus* artem gladiandi.

M. Quid *illi docent*?

J. *Illi docent* bonos mores, &c.

M. Audiamus *Conjunctivum*?

J. Pater vult *ut doceam* te Linguam Græcam.

Ut doceas me Arithmeticam.

Ut doceat eum artem saltandi.

Ut doceamus vos artem *gladiandi*

Si *doceatis* nos Geometriam, cum *docuerint* illos Rhetoricum.

M. Conjuga *doceo* unà cum Passivo, Exempli gratià.

J. *Ego doceo* te Linguam Latinam *ut docear* à te Musicam.

Tu doces me artem gladiandi; ut *docearis* à me artem saltandi.

Ille docet me Dialecticam, ut *doceatur* à me Rhetoricam, &c.

M. Conjuga *lego*?

J. Leg o is it imus itis unt.

M. Quid *tu legis*?

J. *Ego lego* Colloquia *Corderii.*

M. Quid *ille legit*?

J. *Legit* Januam *Comenii.*

M. Quid *vos legistis*?

J. *Legimus* Dixionarium Idiomaticum.

M. Quid *illi legunt*?

J. Grammaticam.

M. Let us hear the *Conjunctive*?

J. My Father will *that I read* two chapters every day out of the New Testament.

That thou read Cicero's Epistles.

That he read Helvicus colloquies.

That we read prime Authors.

That ye read honest Books.

That they read the *English Chronicles*, &c. throughout.

M. Conjugate *lego* together with a Verb in *or*; for Example sake.

J. I read, speak and write *Latine.*

Thou readest, speakest and writest Greek.

He readeth, speaketh and writeth Hebrew, &c. through all *Moods* and *Tenses.*

M. What *do you do*, or what are you a doing?

J. I exercise my self, and do my endeavour for obtaining of the *Latine.*

I also write and make Themes, &c. through every *Mood* and *Tense.*

M. Conjugate *Audio*, I do hear.

J. I, thou, he, we, ye, they *hear*.

M. What do you willingly hear?

J. A learned Oration.

M. What do ye willingly hear?

J. We willingly hear thee sing.

M. What do they willingly hear?

J. The Master speaking.

M. What News dost thou hear?

J. I have heard no News.

M. What News have ye heard?

J. We heard your Father was dead.

M. Let us hear the *Conjunctive*?

J. My Father will *that I hear* a Latine Speech.

M. Audiamus *Conjunctivum*?

J. Pater vult *ut legam* duo Capita quotidie, ex Novo Testamento.

Ut legas Epistolas *Ciceronis.*

Ut legat colloquia *Helvici.*

Ut legamus classicos Autores.

Ut legatis honestos libros.

Ut legant Relationes *Anglicanas.*

M. Conjuga *lego* unà cum Verbo in *or*, Verbi gratià.

J. Ego lego, loquor, & scribo Latine.

Tu legis, loqueris & scribis Græcè.

Ille legit, loquitur & scribit Hæbraicè, &c. per omnes *modos & tempora.*

M. Quid tu agis?

J. Ego exerceo me & do operam Linguæ Latinæ.

Ego exaro etiam & compono Themata, &c. per omnia.

M. Conjuga *audio*?

J. Audi o s t mus tis unt

M. Quid tu libenter audis?

J. Doctam concionem libenter audio.

M. Quid vos libenter auditis?

J. Libenter audimus te canente.

M. Quid illi libenter audiunt?

J. Præceptorem loquentem.

M. Quid Novi audivisti?

J. Nihil Novi audivi.

M. Quid vos audivistis?

J. Audivimus Patrem esse mortuum.

M. Audiamus *Conjunctivum*?

Pater vult *ut audiam* Sermonem Latinam.

That thou bear an *English* Sermon.

That he bear him finish the Discourse, *&c.* throughout.

M. Let's hear the *Imperative Mood,* and the *Infinitive Mood* also.

J. *Hear thou,* or *do thou bear*?
Thou mayst bear me, I cannot bear thee.
I believe that thou *hast heard* our Minister.
I am going to bear Musick.

Of a Participle.

M. What is a *Participle*?
J. A *Participle* is a Part of Speech declined with *Case,* which taketh from a Noun, *Gender, Case* and *Declension.* they may resolve into Verbs, as, *taught,* i. e. *which doth teach.* From a Verb, Tense and Signification; from both of them it hath Number and Figure.

M. How many things belong to a *Participle*?
J. Eight things belong to a *Participle*; Person, Number, Case, Declension, Gender, Time and Figure.
Concerning the Person, Number, Case, Declension, and Gender, the same is to be appointed here which is taught before in a Noun,

M. How many *Tenses* of *Participles*?
J. The *Tenses* of *Participles* are four, and their signification is either *Active* or *Passive.*
The *Participle* of the *present Tense* in *Latine* ends in *ans* or *ens,* but *ing* is the *English* Termination, and is formed from the Ge-

---

Ut audias Concionem *Anglicam.*

Ut audiat illum perorantem, *&c.*

M. Modum Imperativum etiam & Infinitivum?

J. *Audi, audito* tu.
Audias me, non possum audire te.
Credo te *audivisse* concionatorem nostrum.
Eo *auditum* Musicam, &c.

De Participio.

M. Quid est *Participium*?
J. *Participium* est Pars Orationis inflexa Casu, quæ à nomine Genera Casus & Declinationem.

à Verbo vero Tempora & significationes; ab utroque Numerum & Figuram accipit.

M. Quot accidentia *Participio*?

J. Octo accidunt *Participio,* Persona, Numerus, Casus, Declinatio, Genus, Tempus, Significatio & Figura.
De Personâ, Numero, Casu, Inflexione & Genere, idem hîc statuendum, quod suprà in nomine est traditum.

M. Quot *tempora Participiorum*?

J. Tempora *Participiorum* sunt quatuor, & significatio *Active* & *Passive.*

Præsens in *ans* vel *ens,* & formatur ex Gerundio in *di,* mutando *di* in *s,* ut *laudan di s monen rund*

---

rund in *di.,* by changing *di* into *s,* as *praising, warning* ; they often become Substantives.

Participle of the future in *rus* is of an active signification; and is formed from the latter Supine, by adding *rus,* as *to read,* or *about to read* ; *to hear,* or *about to hear.*
But there are eight Verbs which form the *Participle* of the *Future Tense* in *rus* irregular, namely, *&c. To argue,*
To root up.
To be.
To be born.
To know.
To die.
To rise ; and
To bring forth.
The *Participle* of the *preter Tense* in *Latine* ends in *tus, sus, xus,* the *English* ending is *d, t, n,* this is also formed from the latter Supine by adding *s,* as *praised, seen, knit.*
The *Participle* of the *Future* in *dus* hath a passive signification, and is formed from the Gerund in *di,* by changing *i* into *us,* as, *monendus* to be warned.

M. How manifold is the Figure of a *Participle*?
J. It is twofold, namely, *simple,* as *breathing* ; and *compound,* as, *taking breath.*

Of an Adverb.

M. What is an Adverb?
J. An *Adverb* is a Part of Speech undeclined. which being joined to a Verb perfects and explains its sense by *whither? how? when? how long? how often? how much? wherefore? where? from whence? whether?* and the like interrogatories.

---

di s. Non raro fiunt Substantiva.

Futurum in *rus,* activæ significationis; & formatur ex posteriori supino addendo *rus*; ut *lectu- rus, auditu rus.*

Sed octo sunt Verba quæ futurum in *rus,* formant anomala, *viz.*
Arguiturus ex arguo.
Eruiturus ex eruo.
Futurus ex fuo.
Nasciturus ex nascor.
Nosciturus ex nosco.
Moriturus ex morior.
Oriturus ex orior ; &
Pariturus ex pario.
Præteritum in *tus, sus, xus,* formatur etiam ex posteriori supino addendo *s,* ut

Laudatu s, visu s, nexu s.

Futurum in *dus,* passivæ significationis; formatur autem ex Gerundio in *di,* mutando *i* in *us,* ut *monend i us.*

M. Quotuplex est Figura *Participiorum.*
J. Duplex, viz. *simplex,* ut *spirans* ; & *composita,* ut *respirans.*

De Adverbio.

M. Quid est Adverbium?
J. Adverbium est pars Orationis, non flexa ; quæ adjecta verbo sensum ejus perfecit atque explanat, ut, *quo? quomodo? quando? quousque? quoties? quantum? quare? ubi? unde? utrum,* &c.

Latine

Latine Adverbs commonly end in *e, o, ter, um, us.*

Adverbs derived from Adjectives, are compared by degrees as they are, and govern the same Cases which the Adjectives do, as, *learnedly, more learnedly than he, most learnedly of them all.*

Nuper, nuperrime, *late,* &c.
Sometimes Neuter Adjectives put on them the form of Adverbs. And Præpositions also when they govern no Case are changed into Adverbs, as, &c. *I came at length.*

The kind of Adverbs is twofold; the *Principal,* which hath its rise or beginning from it self, as, *cras, to morrow.*

Derivative. is of those which are derived from some other word as, *furtim secretly,* from *furor to steal,* Figure is simple, as, *prudent;* and compound, as, *imprudent.*

Adverbium frequenter exit in *e, o, ter, um, us.*

Adverbia ab adjectivis nata & comparantur; & eandem etiam constructionem cum nominibus habent, ut,

Docte, doctius illo; doctissime omnium.

Sæpe, sæpius, sæpissime, nostrum.

Diu, diutius, diutissime, *long,* &c.
Aliquando neutra Adjectiva induunt formam Adverbiorum.

Et Præpositiones etiam cum Casum amittunt, migrant in Adverbia, ut, *longo post tempore veni.*

Species Adverbiorum est duplex; *principalis* quæ ex se originem habet, ut *cras.*

Derivativa est eorum quæ nata sunt aliunde, ut, *furtim ex furor.*

Figura est *simplex,* ut, *prudenter,* & *composita,* ut *imprudenter.*

Of a Conjunction.

M. What is a *Conjunction?*
J. A *Conjunction* is a part of Speech which jointly tieth together the clauses of a Sentence, *quo* and, *ne* whether or no; *ve* or, are joined to the end of a word, but are construed before it, and so is the compounding part of other words.

Conjunctions for the most part are placed about the beginning of Sentences, but *Adverbs* about the middle.

The Figure of a *Conjunction* is simple, as, *nam* for; and compound, as, *namque* and for.

De Conjunctione.

M. Quid est *Conjunctio?*
J. *Conjunctio* est pars Orationis quæ Sententiarum clausulas apte connectit.

que, ne, ve sunt Enclyticæ.

Conjunctiones fere in exordio sententiarum ponuntur, *Adverbia* vero locantur medio.

Figura *Conjunctionum* est *simplex,* ut *nam,* & *composita,* ut *namque.*

Of a Preposition.

M. What is a *Preposition?*
Preposition is an undeclined part of Speech, which is put before other parts of Speech either in *composition,* or else in *apposition.*

In apposition, as, *he sitteth at the right hand.*

In composition, as, *he has admonished.*

Sometimes *Prepositions* are used both ways, as, *I am going to my Father.*

These Five *Prepositions* are usually found set after the Cases they govern, as, *with which, towards* England, *even to the setting of the Sun.*

M. Which are the accidents of a Præposition?
J. To a Præposition belongs Case, Government or Construction.

The following Prepositions govern an *Accusative Case,* as

To, in the power, against, on this side, about, without.

Towards, at, before, on the other side, beyond, above, towards and within.

Beyond, after, besides, for, nigh to, behind, according to.

By or through, about, about, against, nigh to, between, for, or because, beneath.

Prepositions governing or requiring after them an Ablative case are, &c. from, from, without, without, with, before, concerning of, out of, openly, before comparatively, for, without.

Privily, in, or, into, under, under, above, signifying motion, have an accusative after them; but sig-

De Præpositione.

M. Quid est Præpositio?
J. Præpositio est pars Orationis indeclinabilis, quæ aliis orationis partibus, vel in compositione, vel in appositione præponuntur.

Appositione, ut, *sedit ad dextram.*

Compositione; ut *ad--monuit.*

Aliquando geminantur, ut *adeo ad patrem.*

Cum, penes, tenus, versus, usque postponi suis casibus inveniuntur, ut, *quibus cum,* Anglicam *versus ad occidentem usque.*

M. Quæ accidentia Præpositionis?

J. Præpositioni accidit casus regimen sive constructio, *viz.*

Præpositiones sequentes adjunguntur Accusativo.

Ad, penes, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra.

Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus & intra.

Ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pone, secundum.

Per, circum, circa, contra, juxta, inter, ob, infra.

Præpositiones ablativum regentes sunt *a, ab, abs, absque, cum, coram, de, e, ex, palam, præ, pro, sine.*

Clam, vel clanculum, in, sub, subter, super significatione motûs, Accusativum regunt; signi-

nifying reft, govern an ablative.

M. Why do you fay, *up to the legs*, by a Genitive, or an Ablative cafe indifferently.

Tenus governs a genitive cafe Plural, alfo an ablative in both Numbers.

Thefe fix Prepofitions are never found but in compound words *am* about, *di dis* twice, *re* again, *fe* apart, *con* with.

Of an Interjection.

M. What is an *Interjection*?

J. An *Interjection* is a part of Speech which declares the affection of the mind under a confufed voice fuddenly broken off, as *O! out!*

Of the Figures belonging to Etymology.

M. What Figures belong to Etymology?

J. *Artimery, Enallagy, Hellenifme* and *Archaifme.*

Artimery is when one part of Speech is ufed inftead of another, as *thy skill*, here *fcire* is put for *fcientia.*

Enallagy changeth one Perfon, Number, Tenfe, with Mood and Gender for another, as &c, for *qui mihi charior fum eft Enallage Genus. Sed valebis pro vale eft Enallage modi*, &c.

Hellenifme is when *Latine* words are declined like to *Greek* words, as *familias* for *familiae*, or have a *Greek* conftruction, as, *ceafe your noife, the deceived* Alexis *tranfported with paffion*; *irarum* is ufed for *ira.*

---

catione vero quietis ablativum.

M. Quare dicis *crurum tenus*, vel indifferentur *cruribus tenus.*

J. Genitivum pluralem regit tenus; ablativum etiam tam fingularem quam pluralem.

am, di, dis, re, fe, con, funt *Praepofitiones*, fed extra compofitionem non inveniuntur.

De Interjectione.

M. Quid eft *Interjectio*?

J. *Interjectio* eft pars orationis quae fub incondita voce fubito prorumpentem animi affectum demonftrat, ut *O! vah!*

De Etymologiae Figuris.

M. Quae Figurae ad *Etymologiam* fpectant?

J. *Artimeria, Enallage, Hellenifmus, & Archaifmus.*

Eft *Artimeria* cum pars altera fermonis altera ufa, ut, *fcire tuum*, pro *fcientia tua.*

Perfonam numerum commutat *Enallage* tempus, cumque modo, genus, ut, *Pereo quod charius eft mi.*

Hellenifmus erit Phrafis, aut conftructio Graeca, ut

Define clamorum, fallunt ardebat Alexin; *abftinet irarum.*

Ar-

Archaifme tollorizeth old, obfolete and alfo new coyned words, as, &c. for, of me, of thee, an old Woman.

Of Syntax.

M. What is *Syntax*?

J. *Syntax* is an Agreeable Difpofition of the eight parts of Speech amongft themfelves.

M. How many fold is *Syntax*?

Syntax is two-fold, compleat, or anfwering in proportion. And fafhioned, or unlike, which is not regular, but departs from the common rules, and yet neverthelefs relyes upon the authority of good Writers.

M. How many fold is the compleat part of *Syntax*?

J. It is two-fold, *concord*, which is the agreement of words amongft themfelves, and *government*, which is the dependance of one word upon another.

Of the Concord of *Syntax* anfwering in proportion, and the cafe of the Relative with many other matters worthy to be obferved. And firft of

The Concord or Agreement of the Adjective with the Subftantive.

M. Why do you fay, *A guilty confcience needs no accufer*, (not) &c.

J. Becaufe *Caufa* is of the feminine Gender, Nominative Cafe, and Singular Number, and thofe two *Adjectives* muft be the fame, for whatever anfwers the queftion *who?* or *what?* made upon the *Adjective* is the *Subftantive* to it.

Archaifmus admittet vocibus obfoletifque novis, ut, *mis, tis, anuis,* i. e. *mei, tui, anus.*

De Syntaxi.

M. Quid eft *Syntaxis*?

J. *Syntaxis* eft congrua octo partium Orationis, inter fe difpofitio.

M. Quotu plex eft *Syntaxis*?

J. *Syntaxis* eft duplex, perfecta feu analoga quae eft regularis. Et figurata feu Anomala, quae non eft regularis, fed recedit a communibus regulis, & tamen bonorum Scriptorum Authoritate nititur.

M. Quotuplex eft perfecta feu Analoga?

J. Duplex, Concordantia quae eft Dictionum, inter fe convenientia, & *Regimen*, quod eft dependentia umius dictionis ab alia.

De Concordantiis *Syntaxeos*, Analogae & cafu Relativi, cum multis alijs obfervatu digniffimis. Et primo de

Concordantia Adjectivi cum Subftantivo.

M. Quare dicis mala caufa eft filenda (non) malus, filendum?

J. Quia Caufa eft Faeminini Generis, Nominandi Cafus, & Singularis Numeri, & Convenienda funt cum Subftantivo Caufa.

M. By

M. By what rule?

J. Adjectives and also Participles, and Pronouns agree with their Substantives in Gender, Number, and Case, altho' a Verb come between them, as, *this Book must be often read. Death is an Enemy.*

M. How do you say in Latine, &c.

J. My Father and Mother are well, (not).

M. By what rule?

J. Two or more Substantives singular, coupled by, or having a conjunction between them, have an Adjective plural, which shall agree with the Substantive of the most worthy Gender, as;
A fever, slothfulness, the head-ach, and a defluction of Rheum.
These things arise to thee from mid-day sleep.

M. Why do you say I have taught thee many things, but you have forgot them all (not) &c.

J. If the words (*matter* or *thing*) follow an *adjective* in English (*matter* or *thing*) is totally rejected, and the *adjective* put in the *neuter gender* without a *substantive*, as; *many Men say many things.*

M. Why is the word *Men* understood?

J. An *adjective* is sometimes put substantively; and may also have another *adjective* to agree with it in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. as; *much pains. A learned poor Man is more excellent than an unlearned rich Man.*

M. But why dont you say *many things are said by many Men?*

J. If a passive English be to be rendred by a Latine Deponent;

M. Per quam regulam?

J. Adjectiva, ut & Participia, & Pronomina Substantivis, Genero, Numero, & Casu concordant etiam, cum verbum intercesserit, ut *Hic liber sæpe legendus. Mors est inimica.*

M. Quomodo dictiur Latine, &c.

J. Pater & Mater sunt salvi (non) salvus.

M. Quà regulà?

J. Duo vel plura Substantiva singularia per conjunctionem copulata habent Adjectivum plurale, quod cum digniori Genere concordat, ut;
Febris, pigrities, capitis doloratq; catarrhus.
Hæc tibi proveniunt ex somno meridiano.

M. Quare dicis *docui te multa sed oblitus es ommia (non) multas res, omnes res?*

J. Si (*res*) sequitur *adjectivum* (*res*) rejicitur & *adjectivum* in *neutro genere* absolute ponitur, ut; *multi multa loquuntur.*

M. Quare non multi *viri?*

J. *Adjectivum* aliquando *substantive* ponitur; & habeat etiam *adjectivum* secum convenire, ut; *Multum laboris. Pauper doctus indocto divite præstantior.*

M. Sed quare non *multa dicuntur à multis?*

J. Si passivum Anglice facturum per Deponentem Latine; then

---

then the passive is to be varyed into an active.

M. Turn this into Latine, &c.

J. The word *rex* is derived from *rego, to rule.*

M. *Rex* is masculine, why not *Derivatus?*

J. Because a sentence, or the part of a sentence, or any word taken materially (as *rex* is) signifying the word, and not the thing or person may supply the place of a substantive.

The Agreement of the Relative with its Substantive.

M. Say in Latine?

J. He is a wise Man that speaketh few things.

M. Why not *quod* a neuter relative?

J. The relative adjective *qui, &c.* must needs agree with its substantive going before it in gender, number and person; the antecedant answers *who?* or *what?*
But they must not agree in case, for that answers some following word whereon it is governed, else it is the nominative to direct the Verb, if no other nominative come between them, as, *I have the letters which thou sent,* here *quas* is accusat. following the Verb.
Thou art not worthy of the commendation which is bestowed on thee.

M. Whether is it better to say, There is a place which is called a Dungeon *qui* or *quod?*

J. Whethersoever is well said, because a Relative placed between two Antecedents of divers Gen-

---

tunc passivum variatum in activum.

M. Vertas hoc Latine? &c.

J. *Rex* derivatum est a rege.

M. Quare non dixisti *Derivatus?*

J. Quia oratio, aut aliquod membrum orationis; vel dictio aliqua materialiter sumpta suppleat locum substantivi.

Concordantia Relativi cum Substantivo.

M. Dic Latine, &c.

J. Vir sapit qui pauca loquitur.

M. Quare non *quod* pauca?

J. Relativum cum antecedente suo substantivo necesse est genere, numero, & personâ consentire.

Casu autem convenire necesse non est, nam is sequenti voce respondet à quâ regitur; aut præcedit Verbum si nullus nominativus interseritur ut; *sunt mihi literæ quas misisti.*

Tu non dignus es ea laude quam tibi tribui.

M. Utrum melius dictum, Est locus qui Tullianum appellatur, vel *quod?*

J. Utrum est bene dictum, quia *relativum* inter duo *antecedentia* diversorum generum collo-
dej s

ders, rightly answereth both to the following and the former, as, *Not far from that River* which *they call Salia*; here *quod* would agree with *flumine*, and *quem* with *Saliam* in Gender, Number and Person.

M. Which is the Rule, *the Bow and Arrows which thou hast broken?*

J. Two or more *Antecedents* singular with a *Conjunction* copulative coming between, have a *Relative* plural which agreeth with the more worthy *Gender*, as *Thou sleepest much and drinkest often, both which are naught for the body.*

M. Why do you say, *What a one was he? he was such a one as I never saw*; here *qualem* follows *vidi*.

J. Nouns *Interrogatives* and *Indefinites* follow the Rule of the *relative*, that is, by answering the following Word.

M. *I came in season, which is the cheifest thing of all*; which is the antecedent in this sentence?

J. *To come in season* answers *who* or *what*, because a sentence, or any part thereof is sometimes put for *Antecedent*.

Agreement of the Verb with its Nominative Case.

M. Why do you say, *idleness makes naughtiness?* (not)

J. The *verb personal* agrees with the Nominative Case in Number and Person, although the Nominative be understood, it answers *who* or *what*, as, *labour overcomes all things. I am.*

M. Turn this into Latine?

J. *I and my Brother have been sick.*

catum tam sequenti, quàm antecedenti rectè respondet, ut, *Non procul ab eo flumine quod (vel quem) Saliam vocant.*

M. Quæ nam est regula, *Arcus & calami quæ fregisti?*

J. Duo vel plura Antecedentia singularia, intercedente conjunctione Copulativà habent *relativum plurale* quod cum digniori genere concordat, ut *Tu multum dormis, & sæpè potas quæ ambo sunt corpori inimica.*

M. Quare dicis, *qualis erat; Talis erat qualem nunquam vidi?*

J. *Interrogativa & Indifinita* regulam relativorum sequuntur (hoc est) respondenti voce sequenti.

M. *In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum*; quodnam est antecedens?

M. *In tempore venire*; quia oratio aut aliquod membrum orationis interdum ponitur pro antecedente.

Concordantia Verbi cum Nominativo.

M. Quare dicis *otia dant vitia* (non) *datis vitia?*

J. Verbum personale cohæret cum Nominativo Numero & Personà, quamvis subintelligitur, ut *labor vincit omnia. Sum*

M. Vertas hoc Latinà?

J. *Ego & frater ægroti fuimus.*
M. Why

M. Why not some other Number or Person?

J. Because two or more *nominative cases singular* tyed together by a *Conjunction*, also *nouns collective*, or such which in the singular number signifie a multitude, have a verb plural which agreeth with the more worthy person, as, *the People lament.*
Both are deluded by deceit.

M. *Their tears were blood,* which is the Nominative Case?

J. Take whether of them you please: For a Verb put between two nominative cases of divers Numbers may indifferently agree with either of them.

M. *It is the property of Mankind to go astray*; which is the Nominative?

J. *Errare* to err, because a Verb of the Infinitive *Mood* is sometimes put instead of a *Nominative case.*

To learn Arts or Sciences faithfully mollifieth Mens manners, what mollifieth manners?

J. To learn Sciences faithfully.
M. By what rule?

J. A sentence, or some part of a sentence, is sometimes put instead of a *Nominative* case.

M. *Rex* a King is derived from *rego* to Rule, what is derived from *Rego?*

J. Rex, because any word taken materially supplys the place of a *Nominative* case.

M. It repenteth me of this deed, which is the rule?

J. A *Verb* impersonal hath not a *Nominitive* case before it, because it is turned into such case as the Verb governs or requires after it, as; *I am weary of my life.*

M. Quare (non) *fui neque; fuerint.*

J. Quia duo vel plura Nominativa singularia per conjunctionem copulata; Nomina. etiam collectiva habent verbum plurale quod cum digniori personâ concordat, ut,

Populus lugent.
Uterque deluduntur dolis.
M. *Sanguis erant lachrymæ*; quinam est Nominativus?

J. Utrum horum mavis accipe, quia verbum inter duos Nominativos diversorum Numerorum positum cum alterutro convenire potest.

M. *Errare humanum est*, quinam est Nominativus?

J. *Errare*, quia Infinitivus interdum ponitur vice Nominativi.

M. *Didicisse fideliter artes, Emollit mores.* Quid Emollit mores?

J. *Didicisse fideliter artes.*
M. Per quam regulam?

J. Oratio, aut aliquod membrum orationis interdum ponitur vice Nominativi.

M. *Rex* derivatum est à Rego, quid derivatum est à Rego?

J. Rex quia dictio aliqua materialiter sumpta supplet locum Nominitivi.

M. *Pænetet me hujus facti,* quænam est regula?

J. Verbum impersonale nominativum non habet quia vertitur in alium Casum, & regitur à verbo ut; *Tædet me vitæ.*

Agree-

Agreement of the Answer with the Question, and of one substantive with another.

M. By what name are you called?

J. John.

M. Why do you answer in the Ablative, and not in some other case.

J. Because the word asking, and the word answering, shall be the same case and tense.

M. What name hast thou? &c. Of what name are you? *Genit.* To what name do you answer? *Dat.* What name have you? *Accusat.*

M. What doth a Souldier buy? *A Sword.*

Who buys a Sword? *A Soldier.*

What doth a Shoemaker sell? *Shoes.*

Who selleth Shoes? *A Shoemaker.*

What use are shoes for? Shoes are fitted to the Feet.

Gloves? To the hands.

Boots? To the Legs.

Who shaves with a Rasor? a Barber.

Who hews with an Axe? a Carpenter.

Who sews with an Awl? a Shoemaker.

Who sews with an Needle? a Taylor.

Who delves with a Shovel? a Ditcher.

Who mows with a Sythe? a Reaper.

Concerning what matter doth the Lawyer debate, reason, or dispute? about the Laws.

Concordantia Redditivi cum Interrogativo & substantivi cum substantivo.

M. Quo nomine appellaris?

J. Johanne.

M. Quare (non) Johannem.

J. Quia interrogativum & ejus Redditivum ejusdem casus & temporis erunt.

M. Quid est tibi nomen? Johannes. Cujus nominis es? Johannis. Cui nomini respondes? Johanni. Quod nomen habes? Johannem.

M. Quid emit miles? J. Gladium.

Quis emit Gladium? Miles.

Quid vendit sutor? Calceos.

Quis vendit Calceos? Sutor.

Cui re accommodantur calcei? Calcei accommodantur pedibus?

Chirothecæ? Manibus.

Ocreæ? Cruribus.

Quis radit novacula? Tonsor.

Quis dolat Ascia? Faber lignarius.

Quis suit subulâ? Sutor.

Quis suit acu? Sartor.

Quis fodit ligone? Fossor.

Quis metit falce? Messor.

De quâ re differit Causidicus? De legibus.

The

The Merchant? about Shipping.

The Fowler? concerning Birds.

The Soldier? of Battle or Engagement.

The Plowman? about his Oxen.

The Scholar? concerning his Books.

Who debates both about War and Peace?

The King reasons concerning both.

About Bulls? The Plowman.

Concerning Dogs? the Huntsman.

About Diseases? the Physician.

What use is a Cup without Drink?

It is destitute of use.

A Salt-seller without Salt?

It fails at a need.

Where is Bread to be had?

At the Bakers.

What is to be had at the Bakers? Bread.

Where is Wine to be had?

At the Vintner's Tavern.

Where do Scholars meet?

In the School, and stay therein.

Against whom doth an Artificer strive?

With an Artificer.

A Poet? Against a Poet.

A Musician? Against a Musician.

A Scholar? against a Scholar.

For whom doth a Father act?

For a Son.

For whom doth the Son act?

For his Father.

For whom doth the Husband act? For his Wife.

For whom doth the Wife act? For her Husband.

What is to be exercised towards God? Godliness.

What towards Parents? Obedience.

Mercator? De Navibus.

Auceps? De Avibus.

Miles? De Præliis.

Arator? De Bobus.

Discipulus? De Libris.

Quis differit de Bello & Pace?

Rex de utroque differit.

De Tauris? Arator.

De Canibus? Venator.

De morbis? Medicus.

Poculum sine potu quo est?

Destituit usum.

Salinum sine sale?

Destituit usum.

Ubi habetur panis?

Apud penes pistorem.

Quid habetur penes pistorem? Panis.

Ubi habetur Vinum?

Apud penes cauponem.

Ubi conveniunt Discipuli?

In Scholâ, & manent in Scholâ.

Quem certat Artifex?

Cum Artificem.

Poeta? contra Poetam.

Musicus? contra Musicum.

Discipulus? contra discipulum.

Pro quo agit Pater?

Pro Filio.

Pro quo agit Filius?

Pro Patre.

Pro quo agit maritus?

Pro Uxore.

Pro quo agit Uxor?

Pro marito.

Quid exercitur erga Deum? Pietas.

Quid erga Parentes? Obedientia.

What towards Brethren?
Love or Charity.
Of what is a Boy made?
Of an Infant.
Of what is a Youth made?
Of a Boy.
A Man?
Is made of a Youth.
An old man?
Is made from man.
An old woman? Of a Girl.
From a Novice? is made one experienced.
Of a Fawn? a Hart is made.
Of a Lamb? is made a Sheep.
Of an Egg? is made a young Fowl.
Of Fruit what is made? a Tree.
Of a Grape? a Vine is made, &c.
M. How do you say in Latine?
J. Thy Brother *John.*
M. Why not *fratris* the Genitive case?
J. Because Nouns have been named *apposition*, when two or more Substantives happen together without a Conjunction between them, relating to the same matter, are appointed to be put in the same case, as *Mark Tully Cicero wrote these Letters.*

Of Government. Nominative.
M. Why do you say, *I never drink fasting?*
J. Because both before and after them have a Nominative Case Verbs which signifie the State, Condition, Habit, Gesture, Behaviour, Demeanour or Constitution of any person or thing; as, *He stands straight; He is gone to Bed supperless.*
M. I am called *Martin* (non) why?
J. Because both before and af-

Quid erga fratres?
Dilectio.
Ex quo fit puer?
Ex infante.
Ex quo fit adolescens?
Ex puero?
Vir.
Fit ex adolescente.
Senex?
Fit ex viro.
Anus? Anus fit ex puellâ.
Ex Tyrone? fit Veteranus.

Ex hinnulo? fit cervus.
Ex Agno? fit ovis.
Ex ovo? fit pullus.

Ex fructu quid fit? fit arbor.
Ex uva? fit vitis, &c.
M. Quomodo dicitur Latine?
J. Johannes frater tuus.
M. Quare non fratris?

J. Quia *appositionem* vocarunt cum duo vel plura substantiva sine conjunctione de eàdem re dicuntur in eodem casu ut, *Marcus Tullius Cicero scripsit has Epistolas.*

De Regimine. Nominativus.
M. Quare dicis, *Ego nunquam bibo jejunus,* (non) *jejunum.*
J. Quia ante & post se Nominativum habent verba quæ statum ut Gestum Personæ vel Rei significant, ut, *stat erectus; ivit cubitum incænatus.*

M. Ego vocor *Martinus* (non) *Martinum,* Per quam regulam?
J. Quia ante & post se

ter them have a Nominative case verbs passives esteeming or valuing, of understanding, of naming, and of calling, as,
Thy Brother is accounted a learned man. Thou hast been often found false.
The King is stiled the Father of the Country.
My Brother is named John.
M. Turn this into *Latine?*
J. No Man is noble unless he be a lover of Vertue,
M. Why the Nominative after the Verbs?
J. Because both before and after them have a Nominative Case, &c. *I am, I might or should be, I am made or done, to appear, to be reputed, to escape, to excite, to tarry, to be born, to arise,* as, *I will these things should be false.*
The Word was made flesh.
I have appeared a Patron on this side.
Thou wilt become a learned man hereafter.
I will continue thy friend as long as I live.
I was born a Boy in the Year one thousand six hundred ninety four, 1694.
Thou wast born a Boy in the Year one thousand six hundred eighty seven.

Cases alike.

M. I know you have a good wit; why has not *esse* a Nominative after it?
J. Because *te* is of the ablative Case. And the Infinitive Moods of the verbs spoken of in the three last Rules will have like cases after them which they have before

nominativum habent verba passiva æstimandi, cognoscendi, nuncupandi & vocandi, ut,
Fratres tuus habetur vir doctus.
Tu sæpe falsus repertus es.

Rex appellatus est Pater Patriæ.

Frater meus nominatur Johannes.
M. Vertas hoc Latine, &c.
J. Nobilis est nemo, nisi sit virtutis amator.
M. Quare non neminem amatorem?
J. Quia ante & post se Nominativum habent, *sum, forem, fio, appareo, clueo, evado, existo, maneo, nascor, orior,* ut,

Utinam hæc vana forem.

Verbum factum est Caro.
Ego hinc causæ Patronus extiti.

Tu evades aliquando vir doctus.

Manebo tuus amicus quamdiu vixero.
Ego natus sum anno millessimo sexcentessimo nonagessimo quarto puer.
Tu natus ex anno octogesimo septimo puer.

Pares Casus.

M. Scio te esse acri ingenio (non) acre ingenium, quare?
J. Quia *te* est auferendi casûs. Et infinitivi esse, fore, fieri, haberi, videri, & similia ante & post se requirunt pares casûs, ut,

them

them, as, *I am glad you have the matter to your hearts desire.*

Your Father seems to me a good man.

I hear you are now become more diligent. I believe that he is accounted a learned man.

Nom. Gen. Accusat, & Ablat.

M. What cases do, &c. more or less, more largely govern?

Plus, minus, amplius, are joined to, or require after them a *Nominative, Genitive,* or *Accusative,* promiscuously, as *three hundred more. More than fifty enemies.*

He went more than five hundred steps in less than two hours space.

Nom. Dat. Abl.

M. What case doth *opus* govern?

J. *Opus* and *Usus* signifying *need* or *occasion,* require a Nominative or an Ablative of the thing with a Dative of the person to whom any thing is attributed, as,

I use it my self.
I want Money.

Nominative and Accusative.

M. See what a *condition* we are in; why *status?*

J. The Adverbs *en* and *ecce* signifying *behold,* require either a Nominative or an Accusative case, as, *Lo another.*

Genitive Case.

M. Why do you say, *it concerns both Paul and Peter?*

J. *Sum, forem, fio, interest, refert,* require a Genitive case when they signifie *duty, possession* and *property,* as, *Whose Pen is this? my Sisters.*

Gaudeo rem fuisse tibi cordi,

Tuus pater mihi videri vir bonus.

Audio te jam fieri diligentiorem.
Credo illum haberi virum doctum.

Nom. Gen. Accusat. Ablat.

M. *Plus, minus, amplius, quos casus regunt?*

J. *Nominativo, Genitivo. Accusativo* vel *Ablativo* plus, minus, amplius junguntur, ut,

Plus tricenta.
Plus quinquaginta hostium.
Plus quingenti passus ivit minus duabus horis.

Nom. Dat. Ablat.

M. *Quem casum regit opus?*

J. *Opus* & *Usus* regunt *Nominativum* vel *ablativum* rei; cum *Dativo* personæ cui aliquid attribuitur, ut

Ipse usurus sum.
Opus est mihi pecuniâ.

Nominative & Accusative.

M. *Ecce tibi status noster,* quare?

J. *Nominativum et Accusativum adverbia en & ecce requirunt, ut en alterum.*

Casus Genitivus.

M. *Quare dicis Pauli ac Petri refert?*

J. Genitivum postulant, *sum, forem, fio, interest, refert,* cum officium, possessionem vel proprietatem significant, ut, *Cujus est hæc penna? Sororis.*

God forbid that ever our Country should ever be made the French.

It is every bodies interest to do well.

M. Why then do you say, *It is my duty,* and *meum* a nominative.

J. It is good for me to do this on this manner, *meâ* being *ablative.*

J. The verb *est* governs a *nominative* neuter, if *duty* or *welfare* be intended. And after *interest* and *refert* we read the ablatives *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, cujâ,* as, *Our staying here is not for your advantage.*

M. Turn this into Latine?
J. The day before the *Calends.*
M. Why?

J. Adverbs signifying Place, Time and Quantity, also, &c. to be busie, to pity, and to have pity upon, require a *Genitive* Case after them, as,

He is to be found no where.
Truce of Complements.
I have business enough of my own.
Have pity upon thine own stock.

M. How do you say in *Latine?*

J. *William* is the *strongest* King, because if many things of the same kind are compared together amongst themselves, we use the *superlative degree,* which will have a *Genitive Case Plural* after it.

M. Why *the fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom* (not) &c.

J. The latter of two Substantives signifying several matter is joyned with the former by a *Genitive* Case, as, *The love of learning in all boys is commended.*

M. What case doth *petax* govern?

Deus prohibet ne nostra regio aliquando fiat Gallarum.

Interest omnium recte facere.

M. *Quare igitur dicis meum est? meâ interest hoc ita facere.*

J. *Verbum est* si officium indicatur regit Nominativum neutrum.

Post *interest* etiam & *refert* legimus ablativos *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, cujâ,* ut,

Tuâ refert nos hinc abire.

M. *Vertas hoc Latine, &c;*
J. *Pridie Calendarum.*
M. *Quare?*

J. Genitivum postulant adverbia loci, temporis & quantitatis; *satigo,* etiam *misereor, & miseresco,* ut,

Nusquam loci invenitur.
Satis Ceremoniæ.
Rerum ego mearum sategi.
Generis miseresce tui.

M. *Quomodo dicitur Latine?*

J. Regum *Gulielmus est fortissimus:* Quia si multa ejusdem generis inter se comparantur utimur *gradu superlativo* cum Genitivo plurali.

M. *Quare Initium sapientiæ est timor Domini* (non) *De sapientiâ.*

J. Substantivum cum substantivo rei diversæ casu Genitivo jungitur, ut, *amor discendi laudatur in omnibus pueris.*

M. *Quem casum regit petax?*

J. *Instar* likeness, and also adjectives ending in *ax*, and these which signifie *care, desire, remembrance, fear, praise, knowledge,* and their contraries, or whatever expresseth an affection of the mind, or dividing, do require after them a Genitive Case, as,

One *desirous of Money.*
Thy Brother is careful to perform his part or duty.
Thou art careless of thy renown.
He that is desirous of learning, learneth many things.
Live mindful of Death.
I will not forget thee.
Don't be so afraid of a Storm.
A mind undaunted at Death.
No Mortal is wise at all times.

My Father is expert in all things.
He is skilful in Arithmetick; but ignorant in Geometry.
There are more bad Boys than good ones.
M. Why do you say my Brother studieth at *Oxford* (not)
J. To the question *where?* is answered by *Domus a House, rus the Country,* and also proper names of places, provided they be of the first or second Declension, and singular only in the Genitive Case, as, *I was born at London, he lived at* Oxford, *he is at Home; He was famous both in the Wars, and at Home also*

Genitive and Accusative.
M. How do you say in *Latine?*
J. *I am sorry for it, or it repents me, or I repent of this* (not)?
J. Because these 6 impersonal Verbs require an *Accusative* of the person, with a *Genitive* of the thing following that, as

J. *Genitivos adsciscunt instar, adjectiva, etiam in ax; & quæ curavi, desiderium, memoriam, metum, laudem, notitiam, & his contraria; aut quamcunque animi affectionem vel partitionem significant, ut instar omnium.*

Pecuniarum petax.
Frater est diligens officii sui.

Tu es incuriosus famæ tuæ.
Qui est cupidus discendi, discit multa.
Vive memor lethi.
Non ero immemor tui.
Non es adeo timidus procellæ.
Mens interrita lethi.
Nemo mortalium omnibus horis sapit.
Pater est gnarus omnium rerum.
Peritus est Arithmeticæ, *sed imperitus* Geometricæ.
Plures puerorum sunt mali quam boni.
M. *Quare dicis frater meus studet* Oxoniæ? non Oxonia.
J. *Ad quæstionem ubi? respondetur Domus, Rus, & propria etiam nomina locorum, modo sint primæ vel secundæ declinationis singularia in Genitivo, ut natus Londini, vixit* Oxoniæ. *Est Domi Belli, domique clarus.*

Genitive and Accusative.
M. *Quomodo dicitur Latine,*
J. *Pænitet me hujus facti* (non) *de hoc facto.* M. *Quâ regula?*
J. *Quia Pænitet, piget, pudet, tædet, miseret & miserescit accusativum personæ, sequente Genitivo rei; vel infinitivo requirunt ut,*

A pretty while ago it repented me that I did it,
Your Brother will be very much ashamed thereof.
I am weary of life
I did pity thy Brother.
He hath pity upon thee.

Genitive, Accusative and Ablative.
M. Turn this into *Latine;*
To forget their own business.
J. Because verbs of *remembrance* and *forgetfulness* without distinction govern a Genitive or an Accusative, or an Ablative, with a præposition, as,
He remembreth his promise.
It is a foolish property for a person to see other mens faults, and forget their own.
Old men remember all those things which they took care to respect.
I have been mindful of this matter —— of thee.

Genitive and Ablative.
M. Say in *Latine?*
J. *A Man of no Credit, or, &c.*
Because words signifying *praise, dispraise,* and such as nearly resemble them, govern either a Genitive or an Ablative Case, as,
a Boy of a comely countenance and honest bashfulness.
M. *A Bird in hand is worth two in the Bush.*
M. Why doth *emo* require *pretii* or *pretio?*
Potior to enjoy or possess, and Verbs of buying and selling, of taxing or rating, of purchasing and giving, require a Genitive or Ablative of the word signifying the price and excels; as,
They have new Books. We must not sell that for Gold which cannot be purchased again with Gold.

Jamdudum pænituit me id fuisse.

Valde pudebit fratrem istius rei.

Tædet me vitæ.
Miserebat me tui fratris.
Miserescit tui.

Genitiv. Accusat. Ablat.
M. *Vertas hoc Latine.*
Oblivisci suorum vel de suis.
J. *Quia verba memoriæ & oblivionis promiscuè vel Genitivum vel Accusativum regunt, vel ablativum cum præpositione, ut,*

Datæ fidei reminiscitur.
Proprium est stultitiæ alienum vitia cernere & oblivisci suorum.

Omnia quæ curant senes meminerunt.

Memini de hâc re——de te.

Genitivus & Ablativus.
M. *Dic Latine, &c.*
J. *Vir nullius fidei, vel nullâ fide.*
Quia aut Genitivum aut Ablativum regunt laus vituperium & quæ hinc affinia, ut,

Est ingenui vultus puer ingeniusque pudoris.

M. *Ego spem pretio non emo quare?*

J. *Potior & verba mercandi, taxandi, contrahendi, adsciscunt Genitivum vel Ablativum pretii & excessûs, ut,*

Potiti sunt libris novis.
Non vendendum est auro quod redimi auro non potest.

I

J. *Inftar* likeness, and alfo adjectives ending in *ax*, and thefe which fignifie *care, defire, remembrance. fear, praife, knowledge,* and their contraries, or whatever expreffeth an affection of the mind, or dividing, do require after them a Genitive Cafe, as,

One defirous of *Money.*
Thy Brother is careful to perform his part or duty.
Thou art carelefs of thy renown.
He that is defirous of learning, learneth many things.
Live mindful of *Death.*
I will not forget thee.
Don't be fo afraid of a Storm.
A mind undaunted at *Death.*
No Mortal is wife at all times.

My Father is expert in all things.
He is skilful in *Arithmetick* ; but ignorant in Geometry.
There are more bad Boys than good ones.

M. Why do you fay my Brother ftudieth at *Oxford* (not)

J. To the queftion *where?* is anfwered by *Domus a Houfe, rus the Country,* and alfo proper names of places, provided they be of the firft or fecond Declenfion, and fingular only in the Genitive Cafe, as, *I was born at* London, *he lived at* Oxford, *he is at Home* ; *He was famous both in the Wars, and at Home alfo*

Genitive and Accufative.
M. How do you fay in *Latine?*
J. I am forry for it, or it repents me, or I repent of this (not)?
J. Becaufe thefe 6 imperfonal Verbs require an *Accufative* of the perfon, with a *Genitive* of the thing following that, as

J. Genitivos adfcifcunt *inftar, adjectiva,* etiam in *ax* ; & quæ *curavi, defiderium, memoriam, metum, laudem, notitiam,* & his contraria ; aut quamcunque animi affectionem vel partitionem fignificant, ut *inftar omnium.*

Pecuniarum petax.
Frater eft diligens officii fui.

Tu es incuriofus famæ tuæ.
Qui eft cupidus difcendi, difcit multa.
Vive memor lethi.
Non ero immemor tui.
Non es adeo timidus procellæ.
Mens interrita lethi.
Nemo mortalium omnibus horis fapit.
Pater eft gnarus omnium rerum.
Peritus eft Arithmeticæ, fed imperitus Geometricæ.
Plures puerorum funt mali quam boni.

M. Quare dicis frater meus ftudet *Oxoniæ?* non *Oxoniâ.*

J. Ad quæftionem *ubi?* refpondetur *Domus, Rus,* & propria etiam nomina locorum, modo fint primæ vel fecundæ declinationis fingularia in Genitivo, ut *natus* Londini, *vixit* Oxoniæ. *Eft Domi Belli, domique clarus.*

Genitive and Accufative.
M. Quomodo dicitur Latine,
J. *Pænitet me hujus facti* (non) *de hoc facto.* **M.** Quâ regulâ?
J. Quia *Pænitet, piget, pudet, tædet, miferet & miferefcit* accufativum perfonæ. fequente Genitivo rei ; vel infinitivo requirunt, ut,

A pretty while ago it repented me that I did it.
Your Brother will be very much afhamed thereof.
I am weary of life
I did pity thy Brother.
He hath pity upon thee.

Genitive, Accufative and Ablative.
M. Turn this into *Latine* ;
To forget their own bufinefs.
J. Becaufe verbs of remembrance and forgetfulnefs without diftinction govern a Genitive or an Accufative, or an Ablative, with a præpofition, as,
He remembreth his promife.
It is a foolifh property for a perfon to fee other mens faults, and forget their own.
Old men remember all thofe things which they took care to refpect
I have been mindful of this matter —— of thee.
Genitive and Ablative.
M. Say in *Latine?*
J. A Man of no Credit, or, &c.
Becaufe words fignifying *praife, difpraife,* and fuch as nearly refemble them, govern either a Genitive or an Ablative Cafe, as, a Boy of a comely countenance and honeft bafhfulnefs.
M. A Bird in hand is worth two in the Bufh.
M. Why doth *emo* require *pretii* or *pretio?*
Potior to enjoy or poffefs, and Verbs of buying and felling, of taxing or rating, of purchafing and giving, require a Genitive or Ablative of the word fignifying the price and excels; as, They have new Books. We muft not fell that for Gold which cannot be purchafed again with Gold.

Jamdudum pænituit me id fuiffe.

Valde pudebit fratrem iftius rei.

Tædet me vitæ.
Miferebat me tui fratris.
Miferefcit tui.

Genitiv. Accufat. Ablat.
M. Vertas hoc Latine.
Oblivifci fuorum vel de fuis.
J. Quia verba memoriæ & oblivionis promifcuè vel Genitivum vel Accufativum regunt, vel ablativum cum præpofitione, ut,

Datæ fidei reminifcitur.
Proprium eft ftultitiæ alienum vitia cernere & oblivifci fuorum.

Omnia quæ curant fenes meminerunt.

Memini de hâc re ——de te.

Genitivus & Ablativus.
M. Dic Latine, &c.
J. Vir nullius fidei, vel nullâ fide.
Quia aut Genitivum aut Ablativum regunt *laus vituperium* & quæ hinc affinia, ut,

Eft ingenui vultus puer ingenuifque pudoris.

M. Ego fpem pretio non emo quare?

J. Potior & verba mercandi, taxandi, contrahendi, adifcunt Genitivum vel Ablativum pretii & excefius, ut,

Potiti funt libris novis.
Non vendendum eft auro quod redimi auro non poteft.

I don't sell for more than others, moreover, perhaps for less.

How much doth this Pen-knife stand you in? A Groat.

M. How do you say in Latine?

He is discharged of Neglect.

J. Because verbs of *accusing, discharging, condemning, admonishing* and of *supposing,* govern a Genitive case, which signifie the appearance of truth, or an ablative which signifie the sort or fashion.

M. And what sort of verb is *absolutus est?*

J. It is a verb of *acquitting?*

He condemneth his Son in law of wickedness.

Make him know what he has been, or what he was formerly.

Rich men now-a-days are more esteemed than learned men.

If he be an unjust Judge against me, I will condemn him for it.

M. Turn this into *Latine?*

I want new Books.

J. Because Adjectives and verbs which signifie *plenty, want* and *poverty,* one while take after them a Genitive and sometimes an Ablative, as

This man abounds in all things.

Skilful in all things.

M. Say in *Latine.*

J. I was never sick, or my body was never diseased.

Because we join a Genitive or an Ablative to the verb *est,* and to a substantive also when thereby we describe the form or quality of a person or thing, as,

She is a woman of a great age, with a great Head, and a red Mouth.

He is a man of no value, of no advice, of no request.

Non vendo pluris quam alii, etiam fortasse minoris.

Quanti constat tibi hoc scalpellum? Thalero Imperiali.

M. Quomodo dicitur Latine?

Negligentiæ absolutus est.

J. Quia verba *accusandi, absolvendi, damnandi, admonendi & existimandi* Genitivum regunt qui speciem fidei significant, vel ablativum qui genus notant.

M. Quale autem hoc verbum absolutus est?

J. Est verbum absolvendi.

Sceleris condemnat generum suum.

Admoneto illum pristinæ fortunæ.

Divities jam pluris habentur quam docti.

Si in me iniquus est Judex, condemnabo illum eodem crimine.

M. Vertas hoc Latine, &c.

Jam ego novis libris egeo.

J. Quia Adjectiva & verba quæ *copiam, inopiam & indigentiam* significant modo Genitivum, modo Ablativum post se recipiunt, ut,

Hic vir omnium rerum abundat.

Expers omnibus.

M. Dic Latine.

J. Nunquam ægroto fui corpore, vel ægroti corporis.

Quia Genitivum vel Ablativum verbo *est*; & substantivo etiam subjicimus cum formam aut qualitatem alicujus describimus, ut,

Mulier magno natu, magni capitis & ore rubicundo est.

Est homo nullius pretij, nullius consilij, vel nullo numero.

Dative

Dative Case

M. Why do you say, I have a Book, thou hast Books?

J. Because we use the Verb *est,* signifying *having* with a Dative Case, as,

I hear thy Brother hath got new Books.

Don't you know that Kings have long hands.

Consider that old men have greater wisdom or discretion.

I have 14 Nymphs of excellent Features.

You have silly, shattered Goods.

M. Which is the Rule, *It is a hard matter to please every Body, (not)?*

J. All Verbs, and many Nouns, require a Dative Case of the person or thing which signifies *profit, help, favour, studdy, submission, likeness, pleasure,* and their contraries, as,

If you please.

So it pleased my Mother.

He that is not accustomed to vertue whilst he is young, knoweth not how to disuse himself from vice when he grows old.

I give you large thanks that you have so diligently kept all things for me.

Good Boys willingly obey their Parents.

Nothing is more profitable to Boys than to decline Nouns, and to conjugate Verbs often.

A Scholar can live any where, as a Fisher can in any part of the Sea.

Why are you so troublesome to this Boy?

M. Why do you say, It is a good turn for him (not)?

J. Verbs compounded with the Adverbs *bene, well, male bad-*

Dativus.

M. Quare dicis liber est mihi; libri sunt tibi?

J. Quia verbo *est* in habendi significatione cum Dativo utimur, ut,

Audio fratri tuo esse novis librū.

An nescis longas Regibus esse manus.

Adde quod est senibus rerum prudentia major.

Sunt mihi bis septem præstanti corpore Nymphæ.

Sit tibi curta supellex.

M. Quænam est regula omnibus placere difficile est (non) omnes?

J. Omnia Verba & multa Nomina Dativum adsciscunt ejus rei vel personæ significantia commodum, auxilium, beneficium, studium, submissionem, similitudinem, voluptatem, & his contraria, ut;

Si tibi placet.

Sic matri placuit.

Qui non assuescit virtuti dum juvenescit à vitijs nescit desuescere quando senescit.

Habeo tibi gratias magnas quod tam diligenter omnia mihi asservasti.

Boni pueri libenter obsequuntur suis parentibus.

Nihil pueris est utilius quam sæpe declinare & conjugare.

Omne solum forti patria est, ut piscibus æquor.

Cur ita es molestus huic puero.

M. Quare dicis huic benefactum est (non) hoc benefactum?

J. Dativum postulant verba composita cum *bene, male, satis,*

ly, satis enough; or the Prepositions ad to, ante before, con with, de of, in in, inter between, ob for, post after, before, for, under, above, require a Dative Case, as,

Thou hast paid or satisfied this man.
He lived with us.
Danger hangs over all.
He was present at this business.
He preferreth an unjust Peace before a just War.
Thou hast excelled thy elders in Learning.

M. Turn this into Latine?

J. I must expect my Brother (not)because Adjectives ending in *dus* and *bilis*, and alsoParticiples of the future tense in *rus*(theVerb *est* being added thereto) we elegantly use for the words *must* or *ought* with a Dative Case, as

O *Julius* worthy to be remembred by me behind none of my Companions.
The Wood was not to be pierced through by any Star.

M. How do you say in Latine?

J. Always beware what you say of any body, and to whom you speak it.

M. Why not the Accusative with a Preposition?

J. Because Verbs of *giving*, *restoring*, *comparing* and *trusting* govern a Dative Case, as,

I believe you.
Thou canst never believe him.
If the longest Life should be compared to Eternity it is short.
I thank you that you have restored me the Book which I lent you.

M. Turn this into Latine?

J. Much good may this Draught do you.

ad, ante, con, de, in, inter, ob, post, prae, pro, sub, super, ut

Huic satisfecisti.

Convixit nobis.
Impedit omnibus periculum.
Ille huic negotio non interfuit.
Iniquissimam pacem justissimo bello antefert.
Tu eruditione majoribus tuis praeluxisti.

M. Vertas hoc Latine, &c.

J. Frater expectandus est mihi (non) oportet me expectare, Quia Dativum regunt Adjectiva in *dus* & *bilis*. Participiis etiam futuri temporis (addito verbo est) eleganter utimur pro debere & oportere, ut

O mihi post nullos *Juli* memorande sodales.

Nulli penetrabilis astro lucus erat.

M. Quomodo dicitur Latine?

J. Quid de quoque viro & cui dicas saepe caveto.

M. Quare non ad quem dicas?

J. Quia verba *dandi*, *reddendi*, *comparandi & fidendi* regunt Dativum, ut,

Credo tibi.
Ei nunquam fidas.
Si vita longissima aeternitati comparetur brevis est.
Gratias tibi ago ut reddideris mihi librum quem accommodabam tibi.

M. Vertas hoc Latine.

J. Faxit Deus ut haec potio sit tibi saluti.

M.

M. Why hath *fit* two Datives after it?

J. Two Dative Cases are added to some certain Verbs, one signifies the person, the other *profit* or *disprofit*, as

You are welcome, or, I am mighty glad you are come.
This thing woundeth thy credit.
I am come to help you.
What thou imputest a Vice to others, don't thou account a praise.

Accusative Case.

M. Why do you say, Slothfulness breeds forgetfulness (not)?

J. Every verb active, and verbs signifying actively, for the most part govern an Accusative Case, as

Beware of those whom Nature has markt.
A Wolf changeth his Hair, but never his Wolfish mind.
Truth produceth hatred; familiarity contempt, and prosperity pride.
Take care of the present, and commit the future to the Lord.
Mend what is past, wisely govern or manage the present, and have an eye to the future.

M. Why do you say, I will teach you all those things you know not, with two Accusatives after *docebo*.

J. There are some certain active verbs of *teaching*, *naming*, *putting on*, and the like, which require two Accusative Cases, one of the person, the other of the thing, as,

I will unteach you those manners.
Why hast thou conceal'd this thing from me?

M. Quare habet *fit* duplicem Dativum?

J. Gemini Dativi adduntur quibusdam verbis, alter personam alter commodum aut incommodum significat, ut

Adventus tuus est mihi magnae voluptati.
Hoc caedit tibi honori.
Venio tibi auxilio.
Quod aliis vitio vertis, id tu ne laudi duxeris.

Accusativus.

M. Quare dicis desidia generat oblivionem (non) oblivio?

J. Verba activa omnia & active significantia fere accusativum regunt, ut,

Cave quos natura signavit.

Lupus pilum mutat non mentem.
Veritas odium, familiaritas contemptum & faelicitas superbiam parit.
Tu praesens cura. Domino committe futura.
Corrige praeteritum, rege praesens, cerne futurum.

M. Quare dicis docebo te omnia quae nescis cum duplici accusativo?

J. Certa sunt quaedam activa *docendi*, *nominandi*, *vestiendi* & similia, quae duos accusativos adsciscunt; unnum personae alterum rei, ut,

Dedocebo te istos mores.

Cur caelasti me hanc rem?

I understand that you were the most grateful of them all.

I affirm that thou art blessed.

I with and advise thee that thing.

He put on his Shoes.

M. Why do you say, *A Lyar had need of a good Memory*?

J. The Imperfonal Verbs, &c. *it becometh, it is unfeemly, it delighteth, it helpeth, it behoveth,* require an Accufative Cafe with an Infinitive Mood, as,

It becomes every Boy to obey their Parents and Mafters.

It misbecomes ingenious Boys to lead fuch a courfe of life.

It doth not delight me to hear fuch things now.

M. Why do you fay, I will go home (not)?

J. To the queftion *whither*? is anfwered by *rus, domus,* and proper names of places alfo without a præpofition in the accufative cafe, of whatfoever Declenfion or Number they be, as,

I am returning home. I am a returning into the Country. I am a going to *London.* Go ye Home. He is a going to *Rome.*

Whither do you go unto?

I am going onwards towards *London.*

He carries Coles to *Newcaftle.*

M. Why do you fay, He is tied or ready to ftudy, (not)?

J. Thirty Prepofitions do add an Accufative Cafe both to *Nouns* and *Verbs.*

A Priviledge is granted for fome Service or Duty done.

Accufative and Ablative.

M. Why do you fay under the water indifferently, &c.?

Cognovi te gratiffimum omnium.

Prædico te beatum.

Illud te oro & hortor.

Induit fe calceos.

M. Quare dicis *Mendacem oportet effe memorem*?

J. Imperfonalia *decet, dedecet, deledtat, juvat, oportet* accufativum adfcifcunt cum Infinitivo, ut

Omnem puerum decet obedire fuis parentibus & præceptoribus.

Ingenuos pueros dedecet ita vivere.

Non juvat me talia jam audire.

M. Quare dicis ipo domum (non) ad domum, neque domo.

J. Ad quæftionem *Quo*? refpondetur *rus,* Domus et propria etiam Nomina locorum abfque præpofitione per accufativum cujufcunque Declinationis vel Numeri fint, ut,

Redeo domum ——— rus

Eo *Londinum.* Ite Domum.

Profedtus eft *Romam.*

Quoquo tendis?

Proficifcor *Londinum.*

Noduas Athænas portat.

M. Quare aptus ad ftudia eft (non) aptus eft ftudiis?

J. Triginta Præpofitiones et Nominibus et Verbis addunt accufativum, ut

Beneficium datur propter officium.

Accufativus & Ablativus.

M. Quare dicis fubter aquas, vel aquis promifcue?

Five Prepofitions promifcuoufly add either an *Accufative* or an *Ablative* Cafe, both to Nouns and Verbs, as,

Wicked adts often returned againft his Mafter.

Be little in thine own efteem, that thou mayft be great in God's.

No body fees the Sun for 6 months together under the Artick Pole.

This Bird placed himfelf upon the Tree. She fate on the Tree.

M. Whics is the Rule, *a ftick 3 feet long,* &c.

J. Nouns which fignifie the meafure of magnitude in length, breadth, depth, or the diftance or fpace of a place are joined to verbs either by an accufative or ablative cafe, as, *he was abfent the fpace of an acre of ground.*

He is two days journey from it.

I never ftirr'd a foot from it.

M. Turn this into *Latine*?

J. *We have been in the Garden this two hours,* &c. becaufe to the queftion *how long*? is anfwered by a noun of time, either in the accufative or ablative cafe, as,

How long have you been here?

We have been in the School this two hours.

Hold on in your Journey both night and day.

I fat up late at night.

I lived twenty Years at London.

He lived 29 Years. He reigned 3 Years, 10 Months and 8 Days.

Ablative Cafe.

M. Why do you fay, *Keep your hands off from others Moneys.*

J. Thirteen Prepofitions add an *ablative cafe* both to Nouns and Verbs, as,

J. Quinque Præpofitiones et nominibus et verbis promifcue addunt *Accufativum* vel *Ablativum,* ut

Sæpe in magiftrum fcælera reddunt fuum.

Efto parvus in oculis tuis, ut fis magnus in oculis Dei.

Sub Artico vertice nemo fex menfibus videt Solem.

Hæc avis collocabat fe fuper arborem. Super arbore fedet.

M. Quænam eft regula, *Bacculus tres pedes longas, vel tribus,* &c.

J. Quæ menfuram magnitudinis aut fpacium loci fignificant, accufativo vel ablativo verbis junguntur, ut

Spacium unius jugeris abfuit.

Biduo fpacio abeft ab eo.

Nufquam a fe pedem deceffi.

M. Vertas hoc Latine, &c.

J. Fuimus horto duas horas, vel duabus horis. Quia ad quæftionem *Quamdiu*? refpondetur per nomen temporis in accufativo vel ablativo, ut,

Quamdiu hoc loco fuiftis?

Duas horas fuimus in Scholâ.

Continuato itinere diem & nodtem.

Vigilavi ad multam nodtem.

Vixi Londini viginti annos.

Vixit annis viginti novem.

Imperavit triennio decem menfibus, diebufque odto.

Ablativus.

M. Quare dicis, *abftineas manus ab alienis pecuniis*?

J. Tredecim Præpofitiones & Nominibus et Verbis addunt ablativum, ut,

Evil shall never depart from the House of the unthankful person.

Non recedet malum à domo ingrati.

A man may be known by his companion, who at the same time knows not himself.

Noscitur ex socio qui non cognoscitur ex se.

Nothing is to be done with God out of Christ.

Nihil agendum est Deo excluso Christo.

He is thankful for a benefit.

Gratus pro beneficio.

They are cast down from their place. He drew his Sword.

Dejecti sunt loco.
Ille Gladium e vaginâ eduxit.

M. Why do you say, I am weary with running?

M. Quare dicis, Fessus sum cursu?

J. The Ablative of the cause why, of the Instrument whereby, and of the manner how any thing is done, for the most part is subjoined to Adjectives and Verbs, as,

J. Ablativus causæ instrumenti et modi actionis, plerisque adjectivis et verbis subjicitur, ut

High things do fall by vices; the meanest rise by vertue.

Alta cadunt vitiis, virtutibus infima surgunt.

I am weary with crying.

Plorando defessus sum.

I saw it with these eyes.

Hisce oculis egomet vidi.

He struck him with a Sword.

Ferit illum Gladio.

Patience can rejoice in affliction. The life of mortals is spent in hoping well and receiving evil.

Gaudeat patientia duris.
Bene sperando, et male habendo consumitur vita mortalium.

Time passeth away with a swift foot.

Cito pede præterit ætas.

Continual dropping wears a hole in a stone, not by the force thereof, but by often falling.

Guta cavet lapidem, non vi, sed sæpe cadendo.

And so Man becomes learned, not by force, but by often reading.

Sic studium crescit non vi, sed sæpe legendo.

M. What Case doth *Utor* govern?

M. Quem casum regit *utor*?

J. *Creor*, I am created, &c. I esteem, I enjoy, I associate, I am glad, I endeavour, I pursue, I eat, I use, I buy, I impart, I rejoice, I deal, I change, I count, I hinder, I stand, I surcease, I live, and *victito* to live by feeding, require an ablative case, as

J. Ablativus adsciscunt creor, dignor, fruor, fungor, lætor, nitor, prosequor, vescor, utor, conflo, communico, gaudeo, impertio, muto, mumero, officio, sto, supersedeo, vivo & victito, et

We cannot well make use of our soul when the body is fill'd with Meat and Drink.

Mente recte uti non possumus, multo cibo et potu completi.

I do,

I do or am a doing my duty.

Fungor officio meo.

I have company.

Fruor præcentibus.

I feed on milk, cheese and flesh.

Vescor lacte caseo carne.

That a bad Man can rejoyce at anothers misfortune.

Ut malus gaudeat alienis.

Now truely, I dont think my self worthy of such honour.

Haud equidem tali me dignor honore.

M. Why do you say, *thou art more worthy of all commendation and honour than he* (not), &c.

M. Quare dicis, tu dignior es omnilaude & honore quam ille (non) laudis, honoris?

J. *Captus* deceived, &c. dear price, content, troubled, worthy, unworthy, relying upon, endued, banished, bound or sold, and *vilis* cheap govern an Ablative Case as;

J. Captus, carus, contentus, affectus, dignus, indignus, fretus, præditus, extorris venalis & vilis regunt Ablativum ut;

This thing is not fit to be spoken. that which is dishonest to be done, is foul to be spoken.

Hæc res est indigna relatu. Quod factu fædum est; & turpe dictu.

Thy Brother is endued with an excellent wit.

Frater tuus præditus est excellenti ingenio.

What a Man wants not is dear of 3 farthings.

Quod non opus est asse carum est.

Moles being blind have dig'd their dens. My Father is now very well.

Oculis capti fodere cubilia talpæ. Pater meus jam affectus & est optima valitudine.

I am content with a little.

Ego parvo sum contentus.

This Book is sold for three Shillings. It is cheap of 13 s 2 d 6.

Hic liber venalis est tribus solidis. Vilis viginti minis est.

M. Which is the Rule *the King coming the Enemies fled.*

M. Quænam est regula Rege veniente hostes fugere.

J. Two Ablative Cases put absolutely in a Sentence may be construed by the Particles, &c. *when, whilst, that, after that,* if the Participle be resolved into a Verb, and the Substantive into a Nominative to direct it as; *Christ was born Augustus ruling* i. e. *whilst that he reigned.*

J. Duo Ablativi in oratione absolutè ponuntur per particulas cum, dum, postquam exponi possunt ut;

Imperante Augusto natus est Christus i. e. dum Augustus Imperavit.

Christ was crucified Tyberus being Emperour. Now when Mary heard that Christ came, she ran to meet him.

Imperante Tyberio crucifixus. jam audito Maria Christum venisse currit.

M. *Thou art more learned than my Brother, or a better Scholar?*

M. Tutu es doctior meo fratre (non) quam meus frater quare?

J. Com-

J. Comparatives, which may be construed by *quam than*, govern an Ablative Case without *quam* as;

This Wine is better than that, nothing is more beautiful than Vertue.

Nothing more gallant than Wisdom.

Nothing can be devised to be more blessed then a quiet Conscience.

Better an honest death than a base life.

Silver is more base than Gold, and Gold than Vertues.

M. Turn this into Latine?
I will come again by one a clock, because to the question when?
J. Is answered by a Noun of time in the Ablative Case as; *when was that done? It was done this year, last month. This week. Yesterday, very lately, when I had read your Letters.*
See you are here at 3 a clock.
It happened twice in 12 hours time.
M. Which is the rule? Not only to have been at, but to have lived at Jerusalem is to be praised.
J. To the question where? Is answered by *Domus, rus*, and proper Names of Places by an Ablative Case, provided they be of the 3 Declension and plural Number only as; where do you live now? At *Venice*, at *Jerusalem*, at *Athens*, at *Gades*.
M. I am come out of the Country. Why *ruri*?
J. To the question from whence? Is answered by the Ablative with a Preposition of proper Names of Places and Appellatives as; from whence come

Comparativa quæ construuntur per *quam* Ablativum regunt ut;

Hoc vinum est melius illo.

Nihil est virtute formosius.

Nihil sapientiâ pulchrius.

Tranquillâ conscientiâ nihil beatius excogitari potest.

Honesta mors turpi vitâ potior. vilius argentum est auro & virtutibus aurum.

M. Vertas hoc Latine, &c?
Primâ horâ redibo. M. Quâ regula?
J. Ad quæstionem *Quando?* Respondetur per nomen temporis in Ablativo ut; *Quando id factum? Hoc anno. Superiori mense. Hâc Septimanâ. Hesterno die his proximis diebus. Lectis tuis epistolis.*
Vide ut horâ tertiâ adsis.
Bis accidit duodecim horarum spacio.
M. Quænam est regula? *Non Hyerosolymis fuisse sed vixisse bene laudandum est.*
J. Ad quæstionem ubi? Respondetur domus rus. & propia nomina locorum tertiæ Declinationis & Pluralia tantum per Ablativum ut;

Ubi num vivis? Venetiis. Hyerosolymis, Athænis, Gadibus.

M. *Venio ex ruri* quare?

J. Ad quæstionem unde? Respondetur propria nomina locorum & Appellativa per Ablativum cum præpositione; ut, unde venis? à domo,

you? from home. From *London*, out of the Country, Garden, Chamber, from the City *Carthage*.

Ablative and Dative.
M. Why do you say, he is commended of these, and blamed of those (not)?
J. Passive Verbs govern an *Ablative Case* with a Præposition, as, He is worthy to be beloved of every one.
Slothful Boys are quickly discouraged from Learning.
But sometimes it is turned into a *Dative Case*, as, Honest things, not hidden things, are desired of good men.
M. Why do you say, he is one of the King's Council (not)?
J. An Officer or Magistrate is elegantly put in the *Ablative Case* with the Præposition a, and a *Dative* of the Possessour, Owner or Master. as,
He is one of the King's Officers of Excise or Custom.
He is one of the King's Cup-bearers.
He is one of the King's Footmen.

The Use we are to make of the foregoing Rules.

M. Dii non omnia uni dedère audiamus praxin hujus sententiæ?
J. Dij est nomen substantivum secundæ Declinationis. Numero singulari. Deus, Deus, Dei, Deo, Deum, Deo. Numero Plurali,
N. Dei Dij vel Divi. Deorum, Diorum vel Divorum. Deis, Diis vel Divis, &c.
M. Quare vocativo Deus?
J. Deus habet vocativo Deus, & meus masculino mi.

ex *Londino*, ex ruri, ex horto, è cubiculo, à *Carthagine*.

Ablativus & Dativus.
M. Quare dicis, Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis (non) horum illorum.
J. Passiva verba cum Præpositione regunt *ablativum*, ut
Deligendus est ab omnibus.

Ignavi à discendo cito deterrentur.

Sed aliquando vertitur in *Dativum*, ut
Honesta bonis viris non occulta petuntur.
M. Quare dicis, Est Regi a Consiliis (non) est Senator Regis?
J. Magistratus eleganter *ablativo* ponitur cum præpositione à; & *Dativo* possessoris sive Magistri, ut,

Est Regi à Publicanis.

Est Regi à Poculis.

Est Regi à Pedibus.

Praxis de regulis antecedentibus.

M. Cujus Generis?
J. Est masculini generis, quia in *us*, secundæ et quartæ inflectionis masculina sunt.
M. Dij cujus casûs?
J. Est nominandi casus pluralis numeri, & præcedit verbum Dedère, quia Nominativus præcedit verbum personale finitum simili numero et personâ. Non est adverbium. Dedère est verbum activum
R

activum primæ conjugationis, do, dedi, datum.

J. Quare *dedi* in perfecto et *datum* in supino?

J. Viginti duo verba primæ conjugationis Perfectum et Supinum irregulariter formant, ubi *do* habet *dedi et datum.*

M. Cujus Modi et Temporis?

J. Est Indicativi Modi perfecti temporis pluralis, numeri et tertiæ personæ, sic ejus rectus Dii.

Quia verbum personalæ cohæret cum Nominativo numero et personâ.

Omnia est nomen adjectivum duarum terminationum. Numero singulari, *omnis et omne; omnis et omne, omnis omni; omnem et omne; omni* Numero plurali, *omnes & omnia; omnes & omnia; omnium, omnibus, omnes & omnia, omnibus.*

M. Quare *omnis & omne?*

J. Adjectiva in *is*, et comparativa Nominativo duas habent voces prima masculini et fœminini et altera neutrius generis est.

M. Quare vocativo *omnis & omne?*

J. Quia *vocativus* similis est *nominativo*; et *ablativus* pluralis etiam *dativo.*

M. Cujus casus *omnia?*

J. Est accusandi casus pluralis numeri et sequitur verbum dedêre. Quia verba activa *omnia*, et active significantia fere accusativum regunt.

M. Uni cujus partis orationis?

J. Est nomen adjectivum trium terminationum.

Numero singulari, *unus, una, unum; une, una, unum; unius, uni; unum, unam, unum; uno, una, uno;* caret Plurali.

M. Quare *unus, una, unum?*

J. Quare adjectiva in *r & us* Nominativo tres habent voces masculini secunda fœminini et ultima neutrius generis est.

M. Quare vocativo, *une, una, unum?*

J. *Ab us* secundæ Declinationis fit *vocativus* in *e.*

M. Quare caret plurali?

J. Plurali careant quibus est natura coercens, et hoc verbum loquitur de *uno* tantum.

M. Quare Genitivo *unius* et Dativo *uni?*

J. Quia alius, alter, alteruter, neuter, nullus, solus, totus et ullus, unus, uter-uterque, utervis et Pronomina Ille, ipse iste, Genitivum per *ius*, et Dativum per *i*, in omni genere faciunt.

M. *Uni*, cujus casus?

J. Est Dandi casûs singularis numeri et regitur a verbo *dedêre.* Quia verba *dandi & reddendi, comparandi & fidendi* regunt Dativ.

Exercitium horæ primæ die *Jovis* pomeridiano tempore.

Usus Exemplorum aliquot ex Regulis Syntaxeos variatione.

Exemplum primum.

Amicus certus in re incerta cernitur. Nauta peritus in tempestate cernitur. Dux fortis in prælio cernitur. Patiens rebus in adversis cernitur.

2. Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur. Vir sapit qui vera loquitur. Vir desipit qui falsa loquitur. Vir vanus est qui multa loquitur. Vir bonus est quis?

Qui consulta patrum, qui leges juraque servat. *Usæ.*

Magistratus bonus est quis? Qui tuetur bonos, animadvertit in malos. Sub-

Subditus bonus est quis? Qui magistratum tanquam patrem veneratur et legibus paret.

Vir sapiens est quis? qui præsentia cernit, præterita repetit, futura providet.

Prudens pater est quis? Qui liberos ab ipsis statim incunabulis ad timorem & disciplinam Domini, ad vere-cundiam, vitiorum odium & amorem virtutis instituit & semetipsum liberis suis omnis pietatis & castitatis exemplar præbet.

Pius filius est quis? Qui patri semper obtemperat, & vitæ ejus exemplum imitatur.

Mansuetus dominus est quis? Qui non verberum sed verborum utitur castigatione erga servos.

Servus fidelis est quis? Qui domino suo simpliciter & ex animo, tanquam christo ipsi, obsequitur.

Præceptor bonus est quis? Qui discipulos fideliter ad doctrinam erudit, & ad pietatem crebris præceptis & exemplo format.

Discipulus bonus est quis? Qui juxta præscriptum præceptoris vivit eiq; se attentem & assiduum præbet.

Pastor bonus est quis? Qui oves tondet, non deglubit.

3. Præceptor legit, vos vero negligitis. Hypodidascalus loquitur, vos vero negligitis. Concionator clamat populus vero negligit. Præceptor docet discipuli vero negligunt.

4. Pater & Præceptor accersunt te. Patruus & amita accersunt te, Bacchus & Apollo accersunt Homerum. Ceres & Bacchus accersunt Venerem.

5. Multum scire vita est jucundissima. Multum discere est vita jucundissima. Multum audire est vita jucundissima. Multum legere est vita jucundissima.

6. Facundia Ciceronis. Eloquetia Demosthenis. Doctrina Ciceronis. Amator Studiorum. Amator virtutum. Amator voluptatis. Amator somni & ignaviæ.

7. Cicero Oratorum eloquentissimus. Virgilius Poetarum Optimus. Cicero Oratorum Præstantissimus. Achilles Græcorum fortissimus. Crassus Romanorum Ditissimus.

Aristoteles Phylosophorum optimus.

Trajanus Imperatorum augustissimus.

Paracelsus Medicorum peritissimus.

Phalaris tyrannor. crudelissimus Mæcenas patronorum beneficissimus.

Saturnus Deorum antiquissimus.

Ulisses Græcorum dolosissimus. Cato senatorum severissimus. Stentor præconum clamosis: 8. Postpono famæ pecuniam: Postponit virtutibus aurum. Postponit sapientiæ divitias. Postponit vitæ famam. Postponit conscientiæ vitam. Postponit æquitati injuriam. Postponit fortitudini ignaviam. Postponit eruditioni lanitatem. Postponit oratori Poetam. Postponit virgilio Homerum. Postponit doctrinæ voluptatem. Postponit Minervæ Dianam. Postponit Veneri Junonem, 9. Pudor pavi penditur, Bonitas parvi penditur.

Virtus parvi penditur.

Philofophi parvi penduntur.

10. Nihili vel pro nihilo habentur literæ. Nihili vel pro nihilo habentur literarum ftudiofi.

Nihili vel pro nihilo habetur Homerus, Et virgilius.

11. Deus eft fummum bonum. Divitiæ funt fummum bonum avari. Voluptas eft fummum bonum epicuri. Virtus eft fummum bonum fapientis.

12. Nunquam fera eft ad bonos mores via. Nunquam fera eft ad doctrinam via. Nunquam fera eft ad pietatem via. Nunquam fera eft ad honorem via.

13. Adolefcentis eft majores natu revereri. Filii eft patri obtemperare. Difcipuli eft præceptorem revereri. Religiofi eft Deum venerari.

14. Plurimi paffim fit pecunia. Plurimi paffim fit aurum. Plurimi paffim fit adulatio. Plurimi paffim fiunt divitiæ.

15. Semper obtemperat pius filius patri. Semper obtemperat honeftus fervus Domino. Semper obtemperat bonus difcipulus præceptori. Semper obtemperat bona uxor marito.

16. Rex pius eft ornamento reipublicæ. Dux fortis eft patriæ ornamento. Magiftratus fidelis eft civitati ornamento. Dominus frugi eft familiæ ornamento.

17. Sylla omnes fuos divitiis explevit. Chriftus omnes difcipulos gratia divina explevit. Socrates omnes difcipulos fapientia explevit. Epicurus omnes fectatores voluptatibus explevit.

18. Qui adipifci veram gloriam volunt. juftitiæ fungantur officiis. Qui adipifci veram gloriam volunt, charitatis fungantur officiis. Qui adipifci verum honorem vult. pietatis fungatur officiis. Qui adipifci præmium virtutis vult, laboris fungatur officiis.

19. Ignavi à difcendo cito deterrentur. Ignavi milites à pugnando cito deterrentur. Otiofi à labore. Stupidis à ftudendo cito deterrentur.

20. Vigilandum eft ei qui cupit vincere. Serendum eft ei qui cupit metere. Laborandum eft ei qui cupit edere. Pugnandum eft ei qui cupit vincere.

21. Samia mihi mater fuit, ea habitabat Rhodi. Maria mihi foror erat, ea habitabat Londini. Elizabetha mihi matertera erat, ea habitabat Eboraci. Anna mihi avia erat, ea habitabat Branonii.

22. Conceffi Cantabrigiam ad Capiendum ingenii cultum. Coceffi Colceftriam ad edendas oftreas. Patruus conceffit Oxonium ad emendas chirothecas. Atheus Amfterodamum concefcit ad eligendam religionem.

23. Intereft magiftratûs tueri bonos, & animadvertere in malos. Intereft Domini bonis fervis indulgere, & animadvertere in malos. Intereft præceptoris ftudiofos fovere, otiofos caftigare. Intereft paftoris tueri oves, lupos arcere.

24. Uxorum ædes curare decet. Nauclerum navem curare decet. Ducem exercitum curare decet. Ludima-giftrum Scholam curare decet. Et cætera per fingulas regulas fyntaxeos cum variationibus,

Sententiæ

Sententiæ Variatio.

Cicero eft omnium oratorum eloquentiffimus.

Nom. *Cicero à nullo oratore fuperatur eloquentia.*

Voc. *Quam fingulari, O Cicero, ornatus à Deo eloquentia.*

Gen. *Summa eft Ciceronis præ aliis Oratoribus eloquentia.*

Dat. *Haud fcio an quifquam Ciceroni fit æquandus eloquentia.*

Accu. *Putafne Ciceronem ulli Oratori cedere eloquentia.*

Abl. *Nemo oratorum Cicerone fuit eloquentior.*

Nom. *Sint alii Oratores eloquentes; at qui cum Cicerone compari poffit nullus eft.*

Voca. *Heus Oratores! Cicero excellit vos eloquentia.*

Gen. *Cicero eft facilè princeps omnium oratorum.*

Dat. *Cicero palmam eloquentiæ præripuit aliis oratoribus.*

Accu. *Cicero omnes oratores fuperat eloquentia.*

Abl. *Cicero ex omnibus oratoribus eft eloquentiffimus.*

Cicero eft vir bonus, dicendi peritus---- ufus.

1. Cicero eft & probus & eloquens. 2. Cicero eft vir cùm probus tùm dicendi peritus. 3. Cicero eft vir probus, & idem dicendi peritus. 4. Cicero eft vir bonus, fimul ac dicendi peritus. 5. Cicero eft vir bonus, pariter & dicendi peritus. 6. Cicero eft vir æquè bonus, atq; eloquens. 7. Cicero eft vir perinde bonus ac dicendi peritus. 8. Cicero eft vir haud fecus bonus ac dicendi peritus. 9. Cicero eft vir fimiliter bonus & dicendi peritus. 10. Cicero eft vir haud diffimiliter bonus & dicendi peritus. 11. Cicero eft vir bonus juxta ac dicendi peritus. 12. Cicero vir eft æque bonus ac dicendi peritus. 13. Cicero eft vir non tantum bonus, fed etiàm dicendi peritus. 14. Cicero eft vir non modo bonus, verum etiàm dicendi peritus. 15. Cicero eft vir quemadmodum bonus, ita & dicendi peritus. 16. Cicero eft vir tam bonus, quam dicendi peritus. 17. Cicero eft vir non minus bonus, quam dicendi peritus. 18. Cicero eft vir præter bonitatem etiàm dicendi peritus. 19. Cicero præterquam quod eft vir bonus, eft etiàm dicendi peritus. 20. Cicero vir eft, de quo dubites, meliorne fit an dicendi peritior. 21. Cicero vir eft, in quo cum bonitate dicendi peritia ex æquo certat. 22. Cicero vir eft, qui bonitatem cum dicendi peritia æquavit. 23. Cicero vir eft, cujus probitati refpondet dicendi peritia. 24. Cicero vir eft, qui parem probitatem cum dicendi peritia æquavit. 25. Cicero vir magna quidem dicendi peritia, veram probitate nequiquam inferior. 26. Cicero eft pari probitate, & dicendi peritia. 27. Cicero vir eft in dicendi peritia egregius, neq; fui diffimilis in moribus. 28. Cicero eft vir clarus dicendi peritia, neq; non illuftris infigni probitate. 29. Cicero eft vir, qui dicendi peritiam morum probitate æquiparat. 30. Cicero bonitas æquat dicendi peritiam. 31. Cicero vir eft probitate morum dicendiq; peritia juxta clarus, &c.

Exercitium horæ primæ diei veneris pomeridiano tempore.

Phraf------- Defcribere prælectionem------- ufus.

Concionem, dictatum, declamati-onem, Epistolam, Thema, Carmina, versionem latinam describere.

Phrasis------ Histerno die occu-patus fui------- usus.

Pridie hujus diei, heri, hodierno die, proximâ elapsâ septimanâ, die Lunæ, die martis, die mercurii, die jovis, die veneris, die Saturni, die Dominico-occupatus fui.

Phrasis----- Non ignoras me len-tius scribere----- usus.

Non ignorat----Præceptor me tardius venire. Mater me altius dormire. Pater me impensius lude-re. Magister me segnius studere. Patruus me velocius currere. Ami-ta me pulchrius pingere. Avuncu-lus me procacius ridere. Matertera me sæpius edere.

Phrasis----- Ego tibi non possum dare operam----- usus.

Non potest dare operam--- Phila-nax Basilio. Priamusq; Hectori. A-chilles Patroclo. Mæcenas ovidio. Cicero Pompeio Pater filio. Præ-ceptor discipulo. Uxor marito. U-lysses Penelope, &c. Ego fratri non possum dare operam.

Phrasis----- Summâ virtute, & sin-gulari humanitate----- usus.

Æneas vir summâ virtute, & singulari pietate. Erasmus vir summâ doctrinâ & singulari judice. Cicero vir summo ingenio, & sin-gulari eloquentiâ.

Virgilius poeta summâ eruditione, & singulari poetices facultate.

Phrasis------ Graviore sum dolore affectus nostrâ factum esse negligentiâ---- usus.

Graviore angore affectus sum, no-stra factum esse incucia. Majori tristitiâ affectus sum, no-stra factum esse incogitantiâ. Molestiore axietate affectus sum, nostra factum esse imprudentiâ. Tristiori luxu affectus sum, nostra factum esse præcipitantiâ.

Phrasis----- Longè alia in fortuna esse atq; ejus pietas ac dig-nitas postulabat.
Usus.
Penelope longe alio in statu fuit, atq; ejus castitas ac constantia postu-labat. Regulus longe aliâ in conditione fuit atq; ejus fides ac magnaninitas merebatur. Aristides longè aliâ apud Athe-nienses in ratione fuit atq;ejus justi-tia ac veritas flagitabat. Cicero longè alio in casu fuit,atq; ejus fidelitas ac eloquentia posce-bat.

Phrasis-------- Nobis erat in animo filium ad Cæsarem mittere ------- usus.

Ciceroni erat in animo, filium ad Cratippum mittere. Patrierat in animo, famulum ad Augustum mittere. Mæcenati erat in animo, virgili-um ad Cæsarem mittere. Penelope erat in animo, Telema-cum ad Ulyssem mittere, &c.

Of the Figures belonging to Syntax.

M. How many figures belong to Syntax.
J. Four, *Pleonasme*, *Syllepsis Hyperbaton* and *Ellepsis*.
Pleonasme is when there is a word in a sentence more than needs as; *I have heard it with these Ears. I have seen it with these Eyes. I have spoken it with this Mouth. Syllepsis* or *Synthesis* is when there is an agreement in Sence but not in Words: Or it is the comprehension of the unwor-thyer under the more worthy as; *both you and the Boy were: The King and the Queen are blessed. Hy-perbaton,* is when the Latines imi-tate aGreek construction,or chang-eth the order of words as ; *me-cum* for *cum* me with me. *Things set on fire above these: Ellepsis* is when any Word is left out in a Sentence that ought to be there to compleat the Sence. The thing moveable is made substan-tial. Whereas if it be fixed you may understand it as ; *They say it is not in paying. What things more, what those men.*

Of Prosodie.

What is *Prosodie* ?
Prosodie is the last Part of Gram-mer, which teacheth how to make Verses well.
M. How many things are to be observed in *Prosodie* ?
J. In *Prosodie* two things are e-pecially to be observed.

De Syntaxis Figuris.

M. Quot figuræ spectant Syn-taxi.
J. Quatuor, *Pleonasmus*, *syllep-sis Hyperbaton & Ellepsis.*
Vocibus exsuperat Pleonasmus & emphasin Auget ut.
Auribus his audivi, oculis vidi-ore locutus.
Personam, & Genus, numerum conceptio triplex.

Accipet indignum syllepsis sub mage digno ut.
Tuq; puerq; eritis.

Rex & regina beati.
Est vocum inter se turbatus *Hyperbaton* ordo ut.
Mecum pro cum me.
His accensa super pro super his.
Dicitur *Ellepsis* si ad sensum di-ctio desit.

Mobile fit fixum ; si fixum men-te subaudis ut.

Non est solvendo dicunt.
Quid plura ; quid istis.

De Prosodia.

Quid est *Prosodia* ?
Prosodia est ultima pars Gramati-cæ quæ Carmina recte Componere docet.
M. In *Prosodia* quot sunt no-tanda.
J. In *Prosodia* duo potissimum, sunt consideranda, viz.

Namely

Namely *the quantity of Syllables, and the way to make Verse.*

M. The quantity of Syllables is already sufficiently taught in the first Part of Grammer, but of what quantity is the last Syllable of every verse?

J. The last Syllable of every verse is accounted common.

Of Feet.

M. At last then concerning the method of making verse, whereof doth verse consist?

J. *Verse is made up of Feet.*

M. And what is a Foot made of?

J. Feet are made of Syllable disposed in a just or right order.

M. What is a Foot?

J. *A Foot is the setting or placing together of two Syllables or more according to the certain observation of the quantities.*

M. How many fold is a Foot?

J. Fourfold, a Spondee, a Trochee, *Iambick* and a *Dactyl.*

M. How is a *Spondee* known?

J. A *Spondee* consisteth of two long Syllables as; virtūs vertue.

M. How is a *Trochee* known?

J. A *trochee* consisteth of a long Syllable first and a short one after it.

M. What is an *Iambick* Foot?

J. An *Iambick* consists of a short Syllable first and a long one after.

M. What is a *Dactyl* Foot?

Syllabarum quantitas & Ratio constituendi carminis.

M. *Quantitas Syllabarum jam primâ parte Grammaticæ plene tractatur; sed cujus quantitatis est ultima Syllaba cujus-libet versûs.*

J. *Ultima Syllaba cujusq; versûs communis habetur.*

De Pedibus.

M. *Tandem igitur de ratione constituendi carminis, unde componitur carmen?*

J. *Carmen ex pedibus est compositum.*

M. *Unde Componitur pes?*

J. *Ex Syllabis justo ordine dispositis fiunt pedes.*

M. *Quid est pes?*

J. *Pes est duarum Syllabarum pluriumve constitutio ex certa temporum observatione.*

M. *Quotuplex est Pes?*

J. *Quadruplex est, Spondæus Trochæus, Iambus, Dactylus.*

M. *Unde dignoscitur Spondæus?*

J. *Spondæus ex duabus Syllabis longis constat ut; virtūs.*

M. *Unde dignoscitur Trochæus?*

J. *Trochæus ex longâ & brevi constat ut; Collē.*

M. *Quid est Iambus?*

J. *Iambus ex brevi & longâ constat ut; āmāns.*

M. *Quid est Dactylus?*

J. A

J. A *Dactyl* consisteth of three long syllables, the first is long the other two are short as; mītěrě to send.

Of Verse and the Figures which belong to scanning them.

M. What is a Verse?

J. Feet being disposed in a just order do make a verse. *Verse then is a Speech bound to a just and lawful number of Feet.*

M. How many kinds of verse?

J. Seven *Hexameter* or *Heroick.*
Pentameter or *Elegiack.*
Phaleucick or of eleven syllables.
An *Asclepiade* verse.
A *Sapphick* verse.
An *Adonick* verse. And
An *Iambick* verse.

M. What is an *Hexameter* verse.

J. An *Hexameter* consisteth of six Feet in number, but of two Feet only in kind a *Dactyl* and a *Spondee.*
The fifth place claims properly a *Dactyl* to it self.
The sixth place claims a *Spondee*, the rest this Foot or that even as we please.

M. Give an Example of an *Heroick* or *Hexameter* verse?

J. *Shall he now take the best things, who here-to-fore would not take any at all.*

M. What belongs to this verse?

J. To verses belong scanning or measuring.

Dactylus ex tribus constat syllabis, prima longa reliquis duabus brevibus ut; mītěrě.

De Carmine & Figuris scansioni accidentibus

M. *Quid est carmen?*

J. *Pedes justâ ordine dispositi carmen constituunt. Carmen est igitur oratio justo & legitimo pedum numero constricta.*

M. *Quot sunt genera Carminum.*

J. *Septem Hexametrum i. e. Heroicum.*
Pentametrum i. e. Elegiacum.
Phaleucium i. e. Hendecasyllabum.
Asclepiadum.
Sapphicum.
Adonicum &.
Iambicum.

M. *Quid est Carmen Hexametrum.*

J. *Hexametrum constat ex pedibus quidem numero Sex Genere vero Duobus Dactylo & Spondæo.*

Quintus locus Dactylum.

Sextus Spondæum peculiariter sibi vindicat sed reliqui hunc vel illum prout volumus.
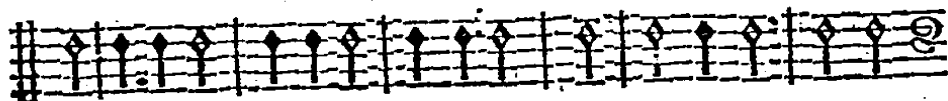
M. *Redde Exemplum carminis Hexametri?*

J. *Optima nunc sumat, qui sumere noluit ulla.*

M. *Quid accidit huic carmini?*

J. *...us accidit commen suratio sive scansio?*

M. What

M. What is Scanning?

J. Scanning is the lawful measureing of a Verse into every one or each of the Feet.

M. How many things belong to the scanning of a verse.

J. Six Figures belong to scansion *Synalæpha, Eclipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, Systole* and *Diastole*.

Eclipsis takes away the letter *m*, with its precedent vowel at the end of a word: *Synalæph*-a cuts of one vowel before another.

Thou art so far from me, O strange! here am I banished from thee: and seeing it is so do thou love me thereabout, as I love thee here.

Which by the Order of Scansion is to be read by Synalæpha and Eclipsis, &c.

Synæresis is the contraction of two Syllables into one as.

Æripides for Aeripides, Alveo for Alvo, &c.

Diæresis parteth a Syllable and of it maketh two Syllables as; *Evoluisset* for *Evolvisset*, Ahæneus for Ahnenus, Evohe for Eve, &c.

Systole makes a long Syllable short. Dyastole maketh a short Syllable long and these Figures are often used Carminis gratiâ, a liberty Poets take.

M. Lets hear the Scansion of the said Hexameter verse.

J. 1. Is a Dactyl. 2. a Spondee. 3. Spondee. 4. Dactyl. 5. a Dactyle. 6. a Spondee.

M. What sort of Verse is this?

M. Quid est *Scansio?*

J. *Scansio est legitima carminis in singulos pedes commen-suratio.*

M. Quot accidunt Scansioni?

J. Sex Figuræ accidunt Scansioni *Synalæpha, Eclipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, Systole, & Diastole.*

Ecthlipsis m.vocales aufert *Synalæpha* ut;

Tu in me ita es, hem! in te ut ego sum: ac tu me ibi ama ut te ego amo hic jam.

Ordine Scansionis legitur per Synalæpham & Ecthlipsin. Tinmites hemtute gosac tumiba muttego micjam.

Syllaba de binis confecta Synæresis esto ut.

Æripides, alveo, cui, tenuis parietis, aurea.

Dividit in binas partita *Diæresis* unam ut;

Evoluisset, Ahæneus, Evohe materiai.

Systole ducta rapit, Correpta Diastole ducit ut.

Recidimus, steterunt.

Naufragia, semisopita.

M. Audiamus Scansionem Carminis Hexametri?

J. Optima. 2. Nunc su. 3. matqui. 4. Sumere. 5. Noluit. 6. ulla.

M. Quale est hoc Carmen?

J. It is an Hexamiter verse because it consisteth just of six Feet in number.

M. What kind of Foot is optima?

J. It is a Dactyl because it consists of three Syllables, the first long and the other two short.

M. Why is o long in optima?

J. Because one Vowel before two Consonants, or before a double one is every where long by position (ti) is short by use or authority of Authors (ma) is also short by an Exception from a final in the first Part of Grammar.

Nunc su is a Spondee because, &c. (u) in nunc is long by position (su) is long because (u) final is always long.

Matqui is also a Spondee because (a) is long by position.

(i) Final are long.

Sumere is a Dactyl Foot.

(u) Is long by authority.

(me) e Before r of the third Conjugation is short.

(re) b, d, t, and e final are short as; mare the sea.

Noluit is a Dactyle also.

(o) By authority is long.

(u) Short, one Vowel before another in several Syllables of the same word is every where short.

(it) b, d, t, Final are short.

Ulla is a Spondee because, &c.

(u) Is long by position.

(a) Finals in a are long, &c.

M. What is a Pentameter verse?

J. A Pentameter consisteth of two Dactyls, or two Spondees with a long Syllable, afterwards of two Dactyls with another long

J. Est Carmen Hexametrum quia constat ex pedibus quidem numero sex, &c.

M. Qualis pes est optima?

J. Est Dactylus quia ex tribus constat Syllabis, prima longa reliquis duabus brevibus.

M. (o) Quare producitur?

J. Quia vocalis ante duas Consonantes aut duplicem ubiq; positura longum est.

(ti) Corripitur usu & authoritate (ma) etiam breve, Excipienda sunt puta itâ quia & omnes casus in a.

Nunc su est Spondæus. (u) in nunc positione producitur (su) longum quia Finita in (u) semper producunt.

Matqui est etiam Spondæus.

(a) Positione producitur.

(i) Finita in i sunt longa.

Sumere est Dactylus.

(u) Longum est authoritate.

(me) e Tertiæ Conjugationis ante r est breve.

(re) Finita in b, d, t, corripiunt in e etiam ut mare.

Noluit est etiam Dactylus.

(o) Authoritate producitur.

(u) Vocalis ante alteram in diversis Syllabis ejusdem dictionis ubiq; brevis est.

(it) Finita in b, d, t, corripiunt.

Ulla est Spondæus.

(u) Positura producitur.

(a) Finita in a producunt, &c.

M. Quid est carmen Pentametrum.

J. Pentametrum constat ex duobus Dactylis vel Spondæis; cum Syllabâ longâ; deinde duobus Dactylis cum Syllabâ longâ ut;

Syllable as; Love is a thing full of pensive or careful Fear. | Res est soliciti plena timoris amor.

M. Measure this verse.
J. 1. A Spondee. 2. A Dactyle. 3. a long Syllable. 4. A Dactyl. 5. A Dactyl. 6. A Long.
M. What is a Sapphick verse?
J. A Sapphick verse consists of a Troche, a Spondee, and a Dactyl, and of two Troches at last as.

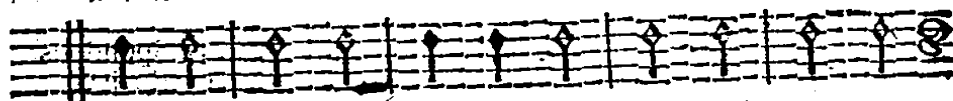Now Snow enough and terrible Hail in our Countrey.
M. Give me the measure hereof?

J. 1. A Trochee. 2. A Spondee. 3. A Dactyle. 4. A Trochee. 5. A Spondee.
M. What is an Asclipiade verse?
J. An Asclipiade consisteth of a Spondee, Dactyle and a long Syllable, afterwards of two Dactyles as; O noble Maecen-as descended of eminent or noble Kings.
M. Scann it?

J. 1. Spondee. 2. A Dactyle. 3. A Long Syllable. 4. A Dactyle. 5. A Dactyle.
M. What is the Adonick verse?
J. The Adonick consists of a Dactyle and a Spondee as.

M. Commensura hoc Carmen?
J. 1. Res-est. 2. Solici. 3. Ti. 4. Plenati. 5. Morisa. 6. Mor.

M. Quid est Carmen Sapphicum?
J. Sapphicum constat ex Trochæo, Spondæo, Dactylo, & duobus demum Trochæis ut.

Jam Satis terris, nivis atq; diræ.
M. Redde Commensurationem?

J. 1. Jamsa. 2. tis. ter. 3. Ris nivis. 4. Atque. 5. Diræ.

M. Asclipiadæum quid est?

J. Asclipiadæum constat, ex Spondæo, Dactylo & Syllaba longa; duobus deinde Dactylis ut; Mæcenas attavis edite regibus.

M. Commensura?

J. 1. Mece. 2. nas, atta. 3. vis. 4. Edite. 5. regibus.

M. Quid est Carmen Adonicum?
J. Adonicum constat ex Dactylo & Spondæo ut.

O
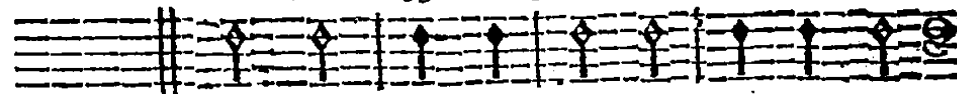
O Fuscus a Man incorrupt of Life and clear of wickedness, needs not the Darts nor the Bow of the Moor, neither his quiver full of poison'd Arrows.
M. What is a Phaleucick verse?
J. The Phaleucick consists of a Spondee, a Dactyle and of three Trochees at last as; O fearful Mabilis whithesoever thou canst fly away, &c.
M. Lets hear the Scansion?

Integer vitæ scelerisq; purus, Non eget Mauri jaculis nec arcu, nec venenatis gravida sagittis.
Fusce pharetra.

M. Phaleucium quid est?
J. Phaleucium constat ex Spondeo, Dactylo & tribus tandem Trochæis ut.

Quoquo diffugi-as pavens Mabili, &c.
M. Audiamus Scansionem?
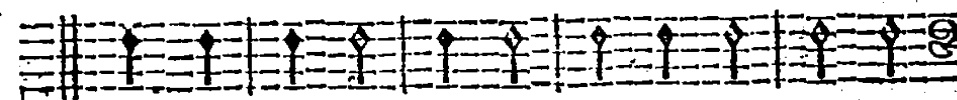
J. 1. A Spondee. 2. A Dactyl. 3. 4. 5. Trochees.
M. What is an Iambick verse?

J. Iambick is a verse which consisteth only of Iambick Feet as; Rome, her self perished by her own strength.
M. Let us examine this verse?

J. 1. Quoquo. 2. Diffugi. 3. Aspi. 4. Venimi. 5. Bili.
M. Quid est Carmen Iambicum?
J. Iambicum quod è solis constat Iambis ut.

Suis & ipsa Roma viribus ruit.

M. Examinemus praxin hujus Carminis?
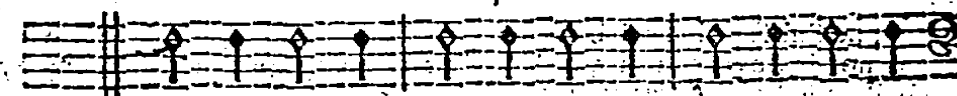
J. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. Are all Iambicks consisting of short and long Syllables.
(su) Is short because one Vowel before another in several Syllables of the same word is always short.
M. Now I thank you with all my heart, fare you well, and God keep you in safety.
J. God be also favourable to you, you shall always have my heartiest Prayers.

J. 1. Suis. 2. et ip. 3. Saro. 4. Mavi 5. ribus. 6. ruit.

(su) Breve est quia vocalis ante alteram in diversis Syllabis ejusdem dictionis ubiq; brevis est, &c.

M. Refero tibi grates ex animo, nunc vale, & sospitet te Deus.
J. Sit tibi Deus etiam propitius nam semper erit tibi vota mea devotissima.

Rules for construing according to natural Order.

BEFORE you Construe read the Sentence distinctly to a Period, observing, 1. Points. 2. Proper-names. 3. Words included in a Parenthesis. 4. Argument and drift of the Place. 5. Circumstances, Quis, Cui, Causa, Locus, quo Tempore, Prima, Sequela *i. e.* who speaks in that place, what is spoken, to whom it is spoken, upon what occasion, to what end it is spoken, where it was spoken, and at what time, what went immediatly before, and what follows next after. 6. Observe the principal Verb with its nominative Case.

Then Construe, 1. vocative Case (if there be any) with its Interpretation, and whatsoever depends on it.

2. Take the nominative Case (of the principal Verb) or whatsoever is put instead of it, and joyn with it whatsoever depends on it.

3. Take the principal Verb and whatsoever depends on it.

4. Take the Case following the Verb, and after it all other Cases in order, as the Genitive, Dative, Ablative.

But Relatives and Nouns that follow the Rule of the Relative, together with their Substantives (if any be expressed) are commonly taken before the Verb, or any other Word whereof they are governed; and so are Conjunctions and Adverbs of likeness as ut, sicut, having sic, or ita to answer them in the second Part of the Sentence.

5. Take the Verb and Adverb together, and Substantive and Adjective together, unless the Adjective pass over its Signification unto some other Word which it governs.

6. Observe Indeclinables, and the Case (they required) following.

7. The Substantive with its Participle, which neither agrees with Verb, nor is governed of any Word, and being put in a Comma by it self is called the Ablative Case Absolute.

8. Observe that Gerunds accord to the Oblique Cases of Nouns, di to the Genitive, do to the Ablative, dumito the Accusative and Supines are put for Infinitive Moods.

Summa Regula.

1. Dictio regens præponenda ei quæ regitur.
Quæ declarant postponenda sunt iis quæ declarantur.
The word governing Construe before the word governed.
And those things which declare, must be taken after those things which are declared.

Rules

Rules for placing Words according to artificial Order.

1. OBSERVE that contrary to Gramatical Order of construction words governed, commonly precede, or are placed before words governing, and in perfect Sentences, Oblique Cases are usually put in the beginning; unless they be Negatives and then they are elegantly placed at the end: And so may Adjectives, and Participles which contain the Emphasis or cheif Point of the Sence.

The Patient also must follow the Agent.

The Nominative Case must be placed in the middle before the Verb: But if a question be asked, or the Verb be of the Imperative Mood it is put after the Verb.

Adjectives usually before the Substantive, and between them place the Genitive Case of the latter two Substantives and the word governing that Genitive Case, or the Verb, Adverb, Preposition and their Cases, yet these last may be placed where they best please the Ear, tho' elegancy require them to stand before the Verb or Participle which they declare.

Both in Prose and Verse sweetly dispose long Syllables with short ones, especially in the ending of Sentences.

Always avoid Confusion of the Words of one Clause with the Words of another, with harshness of Sound and affected Curiosity; ever keeping up the best advantages of dependance, variety, distinction, prespicuity and smoothness of Stile.

Particulæ Anglicanæ in Tyronum memoriæ causa Compendium redactæ.

[*A. An.*] 1. Are Signs of Nouns Substantives common, or are.
2. Put for One and made by Unus.
3. For Each or Every By Singulus with *in* and By *in* alone.
4. Before a Participle in *ing*, and after a Verb of Motion by the first Supine, or a Participle in *rus*, or a Gerund in *dum*.
5. Before a Participle in *ing* denoting Action is made by a Verb of that Tense whose sign determineth.
6. Before words of time, and after once, twice, thrice, &c. are Signs of an Ablative Case with *in* or without it.
7. Before words of time, having a Participle in *ing*, after them by a Verb in such Tense as the sign indicateth.
[*Above.*] 1. In order, height, and place by super, supra.
2. Signifying more than, longer than by, plus amplius, majus, diutius.
3. Sig. beyound, exceiling by ante, præ, præter, ultra, supra.
4. Sig.

4. Sig. higher in place or dignity by prior superior.
5. After over by ad, extra, super. After from by desuper superne.

[*About.*] 1. Sig. concerning by de, super, circa.
2. Sig. near upon, more or less, over or under by quasi, ad, instar plus minus, præter, propter.
3. Sig. ready by a Participle of the future in rus.
4. Before words of time by sub, circa circiter.
5. Before place and persons by circa, circum.
6. Belongs to the foregoing word and is included in the Latine Verse as; about to be futurum ut.

[*Abroad.*] 1. Sig. out of doors by foris. Moving out of doors by foras.
2. Sig. afar of, or at a distance by peregrè.
3. Sig. in the open air by sub dio, sub dium.
4. Sig. in open sight by in publico, in aperto, in propatulo.
5. Sig. all abroad by passim, late. For abroad by longe lateq;
6. Sig. asunder or a part by di, dis in composition.

[*Accord.*] 1. After one by sponte ultro, voluntate.
2. After with one by concorditer unamiter, uno animo.
3. Otherwise it is a Noun, or Verb and made by them.

[*According.*] 1. According to by ad, de, ex, pro, secundum.
2. According as by prout, proinde ut, sicut, proeo ac ut.
3. Accordingly by juxta, pariter, perinde.

[*After.*] 1. Before a Nominative Case by postquam, posteaquam, ubicum, or ut. Before an Oblique Case by a, ab, ex, post.
2. Following a Noun of time by post, but if a Verb follow by quam.
3. Following a Verb belongs to it and is omitted.
4. Sig. according to by de, ad. Or is the sign of the Ablative of the Manner.
5. Sig. nearness or degree, order, or succession by juxta, proxime secundum, sub.
Sig. Afterwards, by postea, exinde.

[*Again.*] 1. Sig. once more by iterum, denuo, rursus, abintegro.
2. Sig. on the other hand by è, contra, invicem, vicissim.
3. Sig. hereafter by post, posthac, postea.
4. Again and again by iterum or etiam with a Conjunction.
5. After Verbs or Sig. back again by retro or re in composition.
6. To and again by ultro, utraq; As big again by duplo major.

[*Against.*] 1. Before a Noun of time by in with an Accusative.
2. Before a Verb with its Nominative Case by dum.
3. After a Verb of Motion by ad or in with an Accusative.
4. Before mind, thought, will, law, custom, right, just, good, &c. by præter.
5. Sig. damage or oppo———— ————to by adversus adver-
sum, in, contra.   6. Sig.

6. Sig. defence or preservation by a, ad, adversus, contra.
7. Over against eregione, ex adverso.
8 To be against, adversus, repugno.

[*All*] 1. Sig. whole by totus, integer, universus.
2. Sig. every one singulus, quisque.
3. Sig. only by solus unus.
4. Sig. as much as, so much as, how much soever, whatsoever, by quantumcunque, quod, quicquid, quantum or quam for quantum.
5. Sig. otherwise by omnis, cunctus, universus.
6. No, or none at all by nullus, omnino. Not at all, non omnino, requa quam, nullo modo. Nothing at all, nihil omnino, nihil, prorsus, nihil quicquam. Never at all, omnino nunquam. No where at all, omnino nusquam.

[*Along.*] 1. With a person or a thing by una.
2. Otherwise it is made by Per or an Ablative Case; else it belongs to, or is included in the foregoing word.

[*Among.*] 1. Not having from before it by inter, in, apud.
2. After from by è, ex.

[*And.*] 1. Next before not, prohibiting an act following by autem, vero.
2. Sig. neither or a word coming between and not by nec, neque, ac, &.
3. Before yet or therefore, is included the Latine-word.
4. Before if by si, or quod sometimes tho' if be understood.
5. Between two active Verbs omit and make the first a Participle.
6. Otherwise by ac, atq; &, nec non, quæ, tum.

[*As.*] 1. Before a Verb or Participle in ing, with a Passive Sign. By a Verb with dum, cum, ubi, ut, inter, super. Or else by in with an Ablative.
2. Sig. which by quod, id, quod, qui, quæ, quod.
3. Sig. in this regard or respect by ut, quia.
4. Sig. like as, even as by ut, sicut, velut, quo-modo, quem-ad-modum.
5. Sig. according as by ut, sicut, uti, ita, ut, pro, prout.
6. Answering to such, or such an one by qualis, qui.
7. Answering to so, or as great as, as much as, as little as, &c. by quantus, qui, quam or ut with a Superlative.
8. Doubled with an Adjective or Adverb betwixt them and sig. tho', or altho' by quamvis. How much soever by quantus-cunq; How little soever by quantus cunq;
9. Found in the former part of a Sentence by tam, non, minus, æque. In the latter part by quam.

[*At.*] 1. Before time, price, manner, instrument, cause, games is commonly Sign of an Ablative Case.
2. Before in a place by in with an Ablative.
3. Before nigh, near, or close by a place by ad, apud---pro, à, ab.

T   4. Before

4. Before places of the first or second Declension and Sing. by a Genitive. But of the third Declension, or the Plural Number by an Ablative.

5. Before a Participle in *ing.* if it can be varyed by a Verb with when, or after that by a Verb with *cum* or *ubi,* or else an Ablative absolute.

6. To be at or present by *intersum, at supper inter* or *super cœnam.*

7. Otherwise it belongs to the foregoing word and is omitted.

[*Away.*] 1. Sig. get you gone, or fie by *apage, apagite.*

2. Before with, to abide or endure by *fero, patior.*

3. After a Verb is part of it, and therefore is omitted.

4. Sig. hence, or from thence, belongs to the next word.

[*Become.*] 1. Sig. its meet, fit, or handsome by *decet.*

2. Sig. is made, or proves to be so by *fio evado.*

3. Before of by *fio, futurum est* with a Dative, or *de* with an Ablative.

[*Before.*] 1. Sig. before that by *ante quam, priusquam.*

2. Relating to time or place by *ante.* In presence by *coram.*

3. Sig. in comparison by *præ.* More than *plusquam.* Rather than *potiusquam.* Sooner than by *citius-quam.*

4. After written or spoken by, *supra, ante, prius.*

5. Sig. formerly by *olim, quondam.*

[*Behind.*] 1. Sig. place or site by *pone post.*

2. Sig. remaining, to be heard or done by *porro, reliquus, supersum.*

3. Sig. inferiority to, or shortness of by *inferior* with a Dative.

[*Being.*] 1. Sig. since that by *cum, quandoquidem.* As being *ut-pote.*

2. Sig. presence in a place by *præsentia.*

3. Sig. to abide, continue, dwell by *esse licet.*

4. Before to, with a Verb by a Participle in *rus.*

5. After far from, by *ut* with a Conjunctive Mood.

6. With a Verb or Participle by *quod* or *quia* many times.

7. Is often left out and the following word is made an Ablative absolute; or the same case with the foregoing word by *apposition.*

8. Just after near by *parum, quin, prope* & *à* Conjunctive.

9. Just after from, importing, let or hindrance by an Infinitive, Passive or a Conjunctive with *ne.*

[*Beneath, Below.*] 1. Before a casual word by *sub, inferior.*

2. Not having a casual word after it by *infra, subter.*

[*Beside, Besides.*] 1. Sig. by or near to by *prope, propter, juxta, secundum.*

2. Sig. except, save, or but, by *præter, extra, præterquam.*

3. Sig. moreover or furthermore by *porro, præterea.*

4. Sig. more than, over and above, by *præter, præterea.*

5. Sig. Beyond; above, by *ultra trans præter.*

[*Beyond.*] 1. Sig. on the further side by *trans, ultra.*

2. Sig. above by *præter, supra, extra, ultra.*

3. Sig.

3. Sig. to go beyond, or over reach by *circum venio, fallo.*

[*Both.*] 1. Sig. two by *ambo, uterque.*

2. Answered by, and, by *cum, tum,* &, *vel,* and *qua* doubled.

[*But.*] 1. After nothing, what, or what else by a Verb and *quam,* or a Noun or Pronoun with *quin, quod, non, nisi.*

2. After cannot by *non,* or *quin* with a Conjunctive.

3. After words of time by *cum.* After words of denying by *quin.*

4. After words, of not doubting, or questioning, not hearing and thinking, &c. by *quin* or *ne, non.*

5. Sig. only by *tantum, modo, solum modo.*

6. Sig. except by *nisi, præterquam.*

7. But for *absq;* But that *ni, nisi, quod, quod nisi.* Not but that *non, quod non.*

[*By.*] 1. Before the instrument wherewith, the manner how, and words of time is Sign of an Ablative.

2. Before words of place by an Ablative, or *per.*

3. Before Participles in *ing* is sign of a Gerund in *do.*

4. Before self, selves sig. alone by *per, solus.*

5. Sig. thro' or by means of by *per,* so in swearing and protestation.

6. Sig. before by *ante, priusquam.* Concerning by *de, ex.*

7. Sig. about by *circiter, sub, ad.*

8. Sig. near or nigh to by *prope, juxta, propter, ad, apud.*

9. Sig. from by *a, ab, abs, ex.* According to by *de, ex.*

10. Sig. evil, or indirect by *malus, sinister, inhonestus.*

11. After Comparatives is sign of an Ablative.

12. After Passive Verbs by *a, ab, abs,* or sign of the Dative.

13. Sign of an Adverb in *im* or *è* as; man by man *viritim* by stealth *furtim,* day by day *quoti-die.*

14. Belongs to the foregoing word and is omitted.

15. By reason of *per, ob, propter.* By and by *mox, brevi.* By the by *obiter.* By reason of that, or because, *quod, propterea.*

16. By the way, or not on set purpose *obiter, cursim, perfunctorie, leviter, intransitu.*

17. By the way or road in *via* in *itenere.*

[*Either.*] 1. Sig. one of the two by *alteruter, utervis, uter, uter-libet.*

2. Sig. or by *aut, vel,* &c.

[*Else.*] 1. Sig. other by *alius.* Otherwise by *alioqui, aliter, alius, ni, ita.*

2. Sig. more or further by *præterea, porro, ad huc, amplius.*

3. Sig. besides by *præterea* with *nemo.*

4. After or answering to either by *aut, vel.* To whether by *sive,* expressed or understood.

[*Even.*] 1. Relating to number by *par.*

2. Sig. equal, or as big as by *æqualis, par.*

3. Sig. smooth, level, plain by *æquus, lævis.*

4. Sig.

4. Sig. namely by *nempe, nimirum.*

5. Sig. also by *etiam, quoque, vel.* Almost by *fere ferme.*

6. Before as by *quemadmodum, sicut,* &c.

7. Before from respecting time by *jam, inde, usq; a, ab.*

8. Before from respecting place by *usq; a, ab, e, ex.*

9. Expletive is omitted as ; is it even so *siccine?* It is even so *sic est.*

[*Ever.*] 1. Sig. any and standing before a *oran* by *nunquis, ecquis, ecquisnam.*

2. Sig. at any time by *unquam, ecquando, siquando.*

3. Sig. always or continually by *semper, æternum, jugiter.*

4. After as redoubled with an Adjective or Adverb by *quam* or *ut* with a Superlative.

5. After or, sig. before that by *cum, nondum, ut ut, antequam.*

[*Every.*] 1. Sig. all by *omnis, universus:*

2. Sig. whole by *ad* as ; to a farthing *ad quadrantem.*

3. Sig. each one by *quisq; unusquisq;.*

4. Before words of time by *quot* with an Ablative as *quotannis,* or by *in* with an Accusative Plural as ; in horas.

[*Far.*] 1. Before a Substantive by *longinquus.*

2. Before an Adjective or Adverb and after a Verb by *multo, longè.*

3. So far from that, by *ita, non, ut, adeo non, tantum ab-est ; ut* or *ne* in the former clause, and *nedum* in the latter.

4. As far as by *quod, quantum, quoad.* Before to by *usq; ad.* Before from by *ab usq;*

5. So far that by *eo, eo usq;.* Far from, or far off from by *longè, procul, multum.*

6. Far Sig. without and from after it by *longè.* Far off, without from after it by *procul.*

[*For.*] 1. Sig. instead or in behalf, according to, or considering by *pro, gratiâ, causâ.*

2. Sig. by reason of, for the sake of by *propter, ob. præ, ergô.*

3. Sig. as, by *in, pro* as ; for a sign *i. e.* as a sign in *signum.*

4. Sig. for all by *per.* For a time by *ad, in,* as ; for a day *in* or *ad diem.*

5. Sig. on ones side, or interest by *a, ab, pro.*

6. Sig. as for, by *de, quod, ad, quantum ad.*

7. Before a sentence inferring a reason by *nam, enim, & enim, quippe.*

8. Before defeases sig. good against by *contra, ad.*

9. Before a person sig. for the use of it is a sign of a Dative Case.

10. Before words of price and wagers sign of an Ablative.

11. Before part by *pro, ex.*

12. Before a Participle in *ing* sig. because that by *quod* or *qui* with a Conjunctive but sig. to the end that by *causâ* and a Gerundive with its Genitive Case.

13. Before profit or honour by *e,* or *ex.*

14. Before distributives by *in* with an Accusative.

15. Before

15. Before purpose, use, end, &c. by *ad, in,* and an Accusative.

16. Before an Infinitive latter two Verbs its omitted.

17. Before a Case requiring an infinitive after it is omitted.

18. After good, fit, profitable, lawful, &c. sign of a Dative.

[*From.*] 1. Before a common place, word of time, age, or order by *a, ab abs.*

2. Before a Participle in *ing* by *a, ab,* or *ex* with a Gerund in *do.*

3. After a word of motion, and before the proper name of a small place sign of an Ablative without a Preposition.

4. After Verbs of differing and taking away sign of Dative or Ablative with *a, ab, abs.*

5. Joyn'd to off, or out by *de, e, ex.*

6. Often belongs to the foregoing word and is omitted.

[*Here.*] 1. Sig. in this place by *hic.*

2. Compounding an English word sig. this and refers to time, place, thing, and is rendred as those Particles direct.

[*Hence.*] 1. Sig. from this place by *hic.*

2. Sig. the cause original of a thing by *hinc, ex hoc.*

3. After words of time by *ad, post.*

4. Henceforth by *post hac, quod superest, dein, porro.*

5. Henceforwards----by *deinceps,------- quod reliquum est.*

[*His, hers, theirs, its.*] 1. With own, and before a Substantive by *suus.*

2. Without own and before a Substantive by *ejus, illius, ipsius.*

[*Him, her, them, it.*] 1. Before self in the Nominative by *ipse.* In Oblique Cases by *sui, sibi, se.*

[*Hither.*] 1. Sig. towards this place by *horsum.*

2. Sig. to this place by *huc.* If it be an Adjective by *citerior.*

[*Hitherto.*] 1. Sig. to this time by *adhuc, usque adhuc.*

2. Sig. to this place, or bound, thus far by *hactenus.*

[*How.*] 1. Sig. in what manner by *quomodo.*

2. Before Adjectives, and Adverbs coming of them, and Verbs, with Admiration by *quam.*

3. Before much and a comparative degree by *quo, quanto.*

4. Sig. by what means by *qui, unde.*

5. Joyned with that, or put instead thereof by *quod.*

6. Sig. what, or why ? By *quid.*

[*How, far.*] 1. Sig. in space or place by *quam longo.*

2. Sig. in going forwards by *quatenus.*

3. Sig. degree of excess or excellency by *quanto.*

4. How is it that, or why ? by *quid? quare? cur? quid est cur? quid fit ut.*

5. How be it, by *at, tamen, attamen, veruntamen, autem.*

6. However by *ut ut, ut cumq;*

[*If.*] 1. In the former part of a Sentence by *si.* In the latter by *sin.*

2. Sig. *whether* by *num ſi.*

3. *If* not fig. *unleſs* by *ni, niſi, ſinon.*

4. If not yet by *ſinon, ſinminus.*

5. But if not by *ſin aliter, ſin minus.*

[*In.*]   1. Before *to* by *in* with an Accuſative Caſe, without to an Ablative.

2. Before *place* by *apud, ad, in.* Before *time* by *in, de, per, inter, inter, intra.*

3. Before words of price it is ſign of an Ablative.

4. Sig. inward by *in ſitus.*

5. Belongs to the foregoing word and is omitted. In Engliſh *Anglice.* In Latin *Latine.* In Greek *Græce.*

[*It.*]   1. Before ſelf by *ipſe.* Before a Verb uſually omitted.

2. After a Verb, or Præpoſition by *id, hoc, iſt-huc.*

[*Laſt.*]   1. Sig. time by *poſtremus.*

2. Sig. order or place by *noviſſimus, extremus, ultimus, ſupremus, ſummus,* or Adverbs coming of them.

3. Sig. to continue by *perenno, duro.*

4. A ſhoe laſt *modulus, crepida.*

5. At laſt *jam, tandem, demum, aliquando, deniq; ad extremum.*

[*Let.*]   1. Sig. to hire for rent or uſe by *loco, eloco.*

2. Sig. alone, or to leave of, or paſs by *mitto, omitto.*

3. Sig. to give leave, or to ſuffer by *permitto, ſino.*

4. Sig. to hinder by *obſto, impedio.*

5. Sig. delay or hindrance by *mora, impedimentum.*

6. Before another Verb it is ſign of an Imperative Mood. Let is alſo ſign of the firſt perſon of the Conjunctive Mood.

[*Like.*]   1. Being an Adjective by *par, ſimilis, æquus.*

2. Being a Verb by *probo, gaudeo, cordi eſt.*

3. Sig. likelyhood or probability by *veriſimile, probabile.*

4. Sig. manner, way, or faſhion by ſome ſuch Adverb.

5. Like as, in like ſort, in like manner by *quem-ad-modum, ſicut, pariter ac, perinde ac, hujus modi.*

[*Little.*]   1. Before a Subſtantive by *parvus, exiguus.*

2. Before a Subſtantive is a Diminutive as; *agellus, puellula.*

3. Before an Adjective poſſitive by *aliquantum, non nihil.*

4. Before a Comparative by *aliquanto, paulo.*

5. Before a Verb by *paulum, parum, non nihil, aliquantum.*

6. Before words ſig. time by *parumper, pauliſper.*

[*Leſs.*]   1. With a Subſtantive by *minor.*

2. With a Verb or after no, nothing, much, little, never the, &c. By the Adverb *minus.*

3. Being part of a Verb as; to make leſs by *minuo, extenuo.*

[*Leaſt.*]   1. Referring to a Subſtantive by *minimus.* To a Verb by *minime.*

2. After at, or the by *minimum* or *minime* leſt that by *ne.*

[*Long.*]

[*Long.*]   1. Being an Adjective by *longus.* An Adverb by *diu.*

2. Sig. to deſire greatly by *percupio, ex peto.*

3. After all (ſomething between) by *totus, omnis.*

4. Sig. fault by *culpa.* A good cauſe by *cauſa.*

[*Man.*]   1. No child, or coward by *vir.* No woman by *mas, vir.*

2. Sign ſervant by *ſervus, famulus.*

3. Is oft underſtood in Latin after Adjectives.

4. Any man by *quis, aliquis.* Every man, *quſque, omnis unuſquiſq;* No man *nemo.*

[*Much.*]   1. Being an Adjective by *multus, plurimus.*

2. With a Verb by *multum, magnopere, vehementer.*

3. Sig. value, price or concernment by *tanti, quanti, hujus, magni, permagni, maximi, plurimi.*

4. Before comparat. and ſuperlat. by *multo, longè.*

5. How much by *quo, quanto.* So much, *tanto, hoc eo.*

6. Belongs to the foregoing word, and is omitted.

[*More.*]   1. Proceeding from much by *major, plus* with a Genitive.

2. Proceeding from many by *plures, & plura.*

3. Before an Adjective or Adverb is ſign of a comparat.

4. With Verbs of eſteeming, valuing, buying, ſelling by *pluris.*

5. Sig. rather by *magis.* Hereafter by *poſt-hac.*

6. Sig. further by *amplius, ultra.*

7. Sig. Elſe or beſides by *præterea, amplius.*

8. Sig. above by *plus, amplius, magis, ſupra, ſuper.*

9. More greatly by *plus, magis.*

10. The more in the former part of a ſentence by *quo, quanto.* In the latter by *tanto, eo.* And ſo the following anſwer each other *quot tot, quoties toties, qualis talis, quamtum tantum quantopere tantopere.*

[*Moſt.*]   1. With an Adjective or Adverb ſign of the Superlat.

2. With a Subſtantive by *plerique.*

3. With a Verb by *maxime, plurimum.*

[*Muſt.*]   1. Sig. neceſſity by *neceſſe eſt.*

2. Sig. need by *opus eſt.* Sig. duty by *oportet.*

[*Near.*]   1. Being an Adjective by *propinquus.*

2. Sig. almoſt by *prope.*

3. Belongs to the next Verb. Near to---unto by *prope juxta propter.*

[*Next.*]   1. Being an Adjective by *proximus.*

2. Sig. order before a Caſe by *juxta, ſecundum, poſt* without a Caſe by *deinde, deinceps.*

3. Sig. time by *poſterus* or ſome Adverb. Place by *vicinus.*

[*Neither.*]   1. Of the two by *neuter.* Anſwered by *nor,* by *nec, neve, neq;*

[*Never.*]   Sig. no, none, not by *nullus, non unus, non ullus.*

2. Sig.

2. Sig at no time *by* nunquam, non unquam.

3. With the before a Comparative *by* nihilo.

4. Being a note of forbidding *by* ne.

5. Never so---such *by* vel, ut, quamvis, quamlibet, etiam si.

[*No.*] 1. Without a causal word *by* ne, non.

2. Next before a Substantive *by* nullus, necquis, nihil, nequid.

3. Before an Adjective and Substantive *by* non, haud.

4. No person *by* nemo, nullus, nequis, non quisquam.

5. No more *by* non plus, non amplius, ne quid ultra, nihil amplius.

[*Not.*] 1. Sig. denying *by* non, haud, minus, nec, neque.

2. Sig. forbidding by non with a future Tense Indicative, ne with Imperative, or Conjunctive, and noli with an Infinitive.

3. After words of caution, or warning *by* ne with a Conjunct.

4. After words intreating deprecating *by* ne or ut and a Conjunct.

5. After Verbs of fearing *by* ut, ne, non and a Conjunctive.

6. In questions *by* non, nonne, annon or que the Enclitick and a Conjunctive Mood.

[*Now.*] 1. Sig. time present *by* nunc. Newly past *by* modo. Instantly *by* jam.

2. Importing connexion *by* autem jam. Transition *by* deinceps.

[*Of.*] 1. Sig. concerning, touching *by* de, super.

2. Sig. out whereof, or matter *by* de, e, ex.

3. Sig. with, or by it is sign of a Gerund in do.

4. Sig. from, or by, after Passives *by* a, ab. abs.

5. Before the latter two Substantives sign of a Genitive Case.

6. Before a Participle in *ing*, sign of a Gerund in di.

7. After Nouns sig. desire knowledg, remembrance, ignorance, forgetting, care, fear, and their contraries, with other affections of the mind. Also many Participials, and all Verbals in ax. Likewise Partitives, Comparatives, and Superlatives put Partitively. And after Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning, purging, acquiting, and pænetet, piget, pudet, tædet it is sign of a Genitive Case.

8. After Nouns and Verbs, of plenty, or wanting, filling, or emptying, spoiling, or disapointing, joy, pride and the like. Also after worthy, unworthy, born, descended, planted, proceeded, published, come, created and need is a sign of an Ablative Case.

9. After a Substantive, and before mine, thine, ours, yours, his, theirs it is omitted as, a friend of mine amicus meus.

10. After most Verbs especially of hearing, or inquiring *by* a, ab, e, ex, de.

11. What kind or manner of *by* qui, qualis.

[*On, or upon.*] 1. Before words of place sig. besides, near to, toward which *by* a, ab, ad.

2. Before words of place sig. above *by* super with an Ablative.

3. Before words of time, musical Instruments, words sig. food, and terms, or condition, &c. it is sign of an Ablative Case.

4. *After*

4. After Verbs of depending *by* a, ab, de, e, ex.

5. After Verbs of bestowing, spending, imploying, washing, loosing *by* in with an Accusative.

6. After misereor, miseresco is sign of a Genitive Case.

7. Sig. after *by* Super. It it omitted when included in the next word.

[*Or*] 1. Put alone or sig. correction in a latter clause *by* ve, seu, sive.

2. Answering whether, &) an, ne, seu, sive. Either *by* aut, vel.

[*Over.*] 1. Sig. beyond *by* ultra. Above *by* super, supra. In comparison præ.

2. Sig. cross or overthwart *by* trans. After or within *by* post, intra.

3. Sig. concerning *by* de super. Sig. too, or too much *by* nimis, nimius, nimium.

4. After a Noun of rule, power, command *by* in and an Accusative.

5. After a Verb is sign of a Datives Case.

6. After Verbs of motion *by* per, trans.

7. Belongs to the next word and omitted.

8. All over *by* per or an Ablative Case.

[*Ought, must.*] 1. By oportet, debeo, or a Gerund in *dum* with est.

2. Ought sig. any thing *by* quid, exquid, siquid, res.

3. For ought *by* quantum.

[*Out.*] 1. Sig. from place or number *by* de, e, ex. Not within *by* extra.

2. Sig. away, or of from *by* a, ab. Belonging to the foregoing word is omitted.

3. Out of Sig. By reason of *by* propter.

[*Own.*] 1. By suus, proprius. Own self *by* ipse.

[*Self.*] 1. After a Pronoun my, your, him, &c. *by* ipse.

2. Before same *by* ipse with ille, iste, hic, is, qui, idem alone or with ille, iste, quod, unus.

[*Since.*] 1. Sig. seeing that, or because *by* cum, quando, siquidem, quando, quidem.

2. Sig. from, or after *by* à, ab, ex, post, ut, quod, cum, postquam.

3. Sig. ago *by* abhinc, ante, diu, dudum, olim, pridem.

[*So.*] 1. In a former clause and answered *by* as, or that in the latter *by* tam, adeo, perinde, sic, ita.

2. In a latter clause, and answering to as in a former *by* sic, ita.

3. Sig. this, that, or the same *by* id, idem.

4. So many *by* tot. So often toties. So much, so great *by* tantus, of that *by* modo, dum, dum-modo.

u

5. Be-

5. Before over *by cunq;* an *Encliteir,* or doubling the word it self as; howsoever *ut-cunq;* or *ut-ut.*

[*Such.*] 1. Sig. kind, fort, or quality *by talis, or is, qualis, ejusmodi.*

2. Sig. nature, difposition, or condition *by fic, ita.*

3. So great *by tantus, ita, magnus.*

4. Sig. this, that, they, or thofe, denoting quality *by hic, is.*

5. Such a, before a Noun *by tam, a-deo.*

[*That*] 1. Before a Subftantive *by ille, is, ifte.*

2. After words of opinion, knowledge, relation, or complaint *by quod.*

3. After fame *by qui, ac, atq;*

4. After words of care, endeavour, defire, intreaty, wifhing, warning, councelling, commanding, obtaining, happening, permitting and affecting *by ut,* which is elegantly omitted after *cenfeo, facio, jubeo, peto, fino, volo.*

5. After fo, or fuch *by. ut.*

6. After words of fear in affirmative fpeeches *by ne* in negative *by ut, ne, non.*

7. Sig. which, who, *by qui or quis.*

8. Sig. to the end that, or fet before may, can, might, could, fhould, ought *by ut.*

9. Sig. becaufe, or put with it *by quod.*

10. Sig. Something to be done *by quod.*

11. Placed betwixt a Comparative, and a Verb is omitted.

12. Before that, *antequam, priufquam;* After that *poftquam, poftea-quam.*

[*Than.*] 1. After Comparatives and before a Noun is fign of an Ablative, but before another word by *quam.*

2. After other, or otherwife by *ac, atq; quam.*

[*Then.*] 1. Sig. at that time by *tunc, tum.*

3. Sig. next, or after that by *tum, deinde.*

3. Sig. therefore, or fo then by *ergo, igitur, tum-poftea, tum-porro.*

[*Thence.*] 1. Sig. from that place by *illinc, inde, iftinc.*

2. Sig. from that caufe, occafion, or ground by *ex-eo, inde, exinde.*

[*There.*] 1. Sig. in that place by *ibi, iftic, illic.*

2. When there is fign of the Verb, as its Nominative Cafe it is omitted.

3. Being compounded with about, after, at, by, from, in, into, of, on, out, upon, to, unto, with, without, &c. by *is, ifte.*

[*The.*] 1. Before a Comparative, fig. by how much by *quo, quanto.* Sig. by fo much by *eo, tanto.*

2. 'Tis omitted in words of diftinction, reftriction and eminency.

[*Though.*]

[*Though.*] 1. Without as by *ut, licet, fi, etfi, tametfi, tamenetfi, etiamfi, cum, quanquam, quamvis.*

2. With as by *quafi, perindequafi, tanquamfi, utfi, quafivero,* &c.

[*Through.*] 1. Sig. place by *per.* Caufe, or occafion by *ex, per, propter.*

[*Till, untill,*] 1. Before a Noun by *in, ufque, ad,* Adverb, by *dum, donec, quoad.*

2. Sig. before a by *ante,* and a Noun of time.

3. Sig. before a by *antequam, anteaquam,* and a Verb.

4. Sig. to allure, or draw on by *lacto, allicio.*

5. Sig. to plow or order land by *colo.*

[*To.*] 1. Before a cafual word and fig. to the ufe of is fign of a Dative, fig. in comparifon of by *ad, præ.* Sig. towards by *in, erga, adverfum.* Sig. of, or concerning by *ad, de.*

2. Before a cafual word of time, fig. untill by *in, ad.*

3. Before a cafual word of that perfon, to, or before, whom any perfon, or thing is complained, accufed, condemned, or fpoken of by *apud.*

4. Before a cafual word, and after words of motion, or Verbs, fig. to apply, add, appertain, belong, call, exhort, provoke, or incite, and Adjectives of forwardnefs, readinefs, fitnefs and inclinablenefs by *ac.*

5. Sig. according by *ad, de, ex, fecundum, pro.*

6. Before a Verb is fign of the Infinitive Mood, yet may be rendred after, any Noun by the Gerund in *dum* with *ad,* or a Paffive fign when neceffity or duty is fig. by a Gerund in *dum.* When purpofe, or likelyhood is fig. by a Participle in *rus.* After Adjectives of worthinefs, fitnefs, &c. and Subftantives that may be varied by who or which, with may, can, &c. by *qui* and a Conjunctive Mood.

[*To be.*] 1. After a Paffive fign, or noun, or verb fubftantive by a Participle in *dus.*

2. After an Adjective, latter Supine, or a Conjunctive by *qui.*

3. After any other Verbs, or an Accufative by the Infinitive Paffive.

4. Without a fign, alone, or before a Noun, or Prepofition in the fame claufe by *effe,* or *ut,* or *qui* with *fum.*

[*Together.*] 1. After words of time by *per.*

2. After words of gathering, or uniting together by *con* in compofition.

3. Sig. Company, at the fame time, or place by *una, fimul, inter.*

[*Too.*] 1. Sig. alfo by *etiam, quoque.*

2. Sig. over before an Adjective, or Adverb by *nimis, nimium.*

3. Sig. fometimes by the Comparative degree and *quam, qui, ut.*

[*Toward.*]

[*Towards.*] 1. Sig. to, noting favour, duty, reverence by *in, ad, erga, versus.*

2. Sig. prospect, or motion towards a place by *ad, in, versus.*

3. Sig. nearness in time by *sub:* In scituation or place by *a.*

[*Very*] 1. Before a Substantive sig. meer, true, pure by *merus, verus, purus.*

2. Before a Substantive sig. even by *vel, etiam.*

3. Before a Substantive sig. himself, it self, themselves by *ipse.*

4. Before an Adjective or Adverb by *multum, valde, admodum, apprime.*

[*Under.*] 1. Sig. place, below or beneath by *sub.*

2. Sig. government, or time of government, by *sub.* and ablat.

3. Sig. dignity, honour, order, degree by *intra.*

4. Sig. colour, shew, pretence by *per.* and an accusative or substantive and an ablative.

5. Sig. number, short of, not so many, fewer than, by *infra, minor, minus.*

[*Up,*] 1. Sig. as far as to by *tenus, usque, ad.*

2. With a verb or verbal is included in the *Latine.*

[*What.*] 1. Sig. that, which, by *quod.* After contrary to by *contra, ac, atq; quam.*

2. Sig. to what pass, end, or purpose by *quorsum.*

3. Sig. partly by *qua.* Sig. how by *quam.*

4. Before a Substantive, on which it depends by *qui, quis, qualis.*

5. Being an Interrogatory, or without a Substantive by *quid.*

[*When.*] 1. Sig. at what time, or at the time that by *quum, ubi, quando.*

2. Sig. while, or whilst that by *in, inter, cum.*

3. Sig. after that, or assoon as, by *ubi, tum, ut, postquam.*

4. Used in a question by *quando* ?

[*Whence.*] 1. Sig. coming and proceeding from by *ex, quo.*

2. Sig. from what place interrogatively by *unde* ?

[*Where.*] 1. Sig. in what or which place interrogatively by *ubi* ?

2. Sig. any thing begun by *unde.*

3. Sig. by what, or which place. or way by *qua.*

4. Being compounded with at, by, from, in, on, to, upon, with, &c. is the same with at which, by which or what, &c. and is made by *quis, qui.*

5. Any where *usquam, uspiam,* no where *nusquam, nuspiam.* Some where *alicubi.*

[*Whether.*]

[*Whether.*] 1. In the former clause, and answer'd by or in the latter by *seu, sive.*

2. Sig. which of the two by *uter.*

3. Sig. to what or to which place by *quo.*

4. Sig. whether or no, of asking or doubting by *ve, utrum, num, ansi.*

[*Which.*] 1. Being a Relative by *qui.* Being a Question by *quis.*

2. Sig. whether of the number by *uter.*

[*While.*] 1. Alone, or after great, little, by *parumper, paulisper, aliquantisper, diu.*

2. While before go or time is made by *dudum.*

3. Sig. in the mean time or space that by *dudum.*

4. Sig. so long as by *dum, quoad.*

5. Sig. until, so long till, by *dum, donec, tantisper, dum.*

[*Who, why.*] 1. In a question by *quis.* A Relative by *qui.* Indiffinite by *qui, quis.* What-when-where before-soever by *quod-quando-ubi-cunque.*

[*Why.*] 1. Interrogatively put by *cur, quare, quid, quidni, quamobrem, quâ causâ, quâ, ratione, qui, quin, quidum, quâ-propter* ?

2. Sig. which or what cause by *quod, qui, cur,* &c.

3. Sig. expletively by *at, vero, etiam, quin.*

[*With.*] 1. Before the instrument, or manner, answering the question why ? wherewith ? how ? It is sign of an Ablative Case.

2. Before words ending in *est* by a Positive with *nimium,* or a Comparative with *æquo,* or *quam* and *decet.*

3. Before a person with reference to a place where one is, or to some power with him by *apud, ad, penes.*

4. After Verbs of comparing, contending, meeting, and being angry is sign of a Dative Case.

5. After Verbs of begining sig. *at,* or from by *à* or *ab.*

6. Sig. company, or together with by *cum* which is set after *me, te, se, qui, quibus, nobis, vobis— cum.*

[*Within.*] 1. Before a word of place by *intra,* or *intus,* if the place be understood.

2. Before a word of time by *cis, in, citra.*

[*Without.*] 1. Sig. not within by *foris, extra.*

2. Sig. not with, by *sine, extra, citra.* Or by a Verb sig. to be void as; *vaco, careo.* Or by a word compounded with *ex,* and *in* for *non.* Or by a word of contrary, signification to that which follows without. Or by negative Particles coming together with Nouns, Participles, or Adverbs.

3. Sig. unless or except by *nisi.*

[*Worth.*]

[*Worth.*] 1. Sig. dignity or authority by *dignitas, authoritas.*

2. Sig. price or value by a Verb of eſteeming and a Genitive.

3. Worth ones-labour-pains-care-while by *operæ-curæ-prætium.*

[*Yet.*] 1. Anſwering to although, and after but. And ſig. notwithſtanding, or for all that by *at, certe, tamen, attamen, veruntamen.*

2. Sig. correction by *quanquam, etſi, tametſi.*

3. Sig. thither, or to this time by *adhuc* in affirmative ſpeeches. In negative ones with not, nothing, ſcarcely, hardly by *nondum, necdum, nihildum, nequedum, vixdum, hauddum.*

4. Sig. ſtill, or at this time by *adhuc, etiam-num, etiam-nunc.*

5. Sig. more or joyn'd with it that is further by *adhuc, etiam.*

[*You, yours.*] 1. directed to one perſon by *tu, tuus,* to more than one by *vos, veſter.*

2. Your is made by *tibi* for *tuus.* And my by *mihi* for *meus* elegantly.

Fruſtra fit per plura quod fieri poteſt per pauciora.

ADVERTISEMENT.

THE Authors diſtance from the Preſs, has occaſion'd ſeveral Indecencies in the Printing, *viz.* in the Pointing, and Differencing of the Character in many Places, which required ſuch Diſtinction, which the *Reader* is therefore deſired to NOTE.

BOOKS.

Printed, and Sold by H. Walwyn *at the* Three Leggs *in the* Poultry *over againſt the* Stocks-Market.

THE Works of the Reverend and Learned Mr. *Charnock*, Fol.

Geography Rectifi'd or a Diſcription of the World in all it's Parts, by *Robert Morden*, 4to.

Sermons on ſeveral Occaſions by Dr. *John Conant*, publiſh'd by the Biſhop of *Chicheſter.*

An Expoſition of the Church Catechiſm, by *John* Lord Biſhop of *Chicheſter.*

A Sermon Preach'd at the Funeral of Dr. *Jekyl*, by *John* Lord Biſhop of *Chicheſter.*

Gradus ad Parnaſſum ſive Novus Synonymorum Epithetorum Phraſium poeticarum, *&c.* ab uno è Societate Jeſu Editio Noviſſima in uſum Scholarum.

Eutropij Hiſtoriæ Romanæ Breviarium ab urbe condita uſq; ad Valentinianum & Valentem Auguſtos, *&c.*

Helvici Colloquia.

Poſing of the Parts.

Engliſh Exerciſe for School Boys to Tranſlate into Latin, Comprizing all the Rules of Grammer, and other neceſſary Obſervations, aſcending gradually from the Meaneſt to the Higher Capacities, by *John Garretſon* School-maſter, the 7*th Edition.*

Bates Harmony of the Divine Attributes.

Blanchards Phyſical Dictionary.

Gibſons Anatomy of Humane Bodies.

Hornecks Great Law of Conſideration

Hornecks Sermons,

By Biſhop *Wilkins* of the Gift of Prayer.

The

ADVERTISEMENT.

F I N I s.